

# KOREAN MADE SIMPLE

GO! Billy  
Korean



Billy Go

A beginner's guide to learning the Korean language

**Korean Made Simple: A beginner's guide to the Korean language  
Volume 1, Edition 1**



**Written by: Billy Go  
Edited by: Michelle Chong and Wooseok Lim  
Published by: GO! Billy Korean**

**Cover and inside illustrations by: HeeJin Park ([heejinbakes.tumblr.com](http://heejinbakes.tumblr.com))  
Hangul letter blocks by: Sarah HaEun Jeong ([esperes.weebly.com](http://esperes.weebly.com))**

**Copyright 2014 GO! Billy Korean  
<http://www.gobillykorean.com>  
All rights reserved**

**eBook Edition, License Notes**

**This ebook is licensed for your personal enjoyment only. This ebook may not be re-sold or given away to other people. If you would like to share this book with another person, please purchase an additional copy for each recipient. If you're reading this book and did not purchase it, or it was not purchased for your use only, then please return to your favorite ebook retailer and purchase your own copy.  
Thank you for respecting the hard work of this author.**

## **DEDICATION**

**This book is dedicated to you, the learner. If it weren't for people like you who are interested in learning the Korean language, this book would not exist. Thank you for being interested in Korean, and for your support in purchasing this book. My only hope is that this book will serve as a strong, first step toward your personal language learning goals – whatever those goals may be. Good luck in your studies.**

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

[Preface](#)

[Introduction to Hangul](#)

[More Hangul](#)

[Introduction to Sound Changes](#)

[Chapter 1: Saying Hello](#)

[Chapter 2: Likes and Dislikes](#)

[Chapter 3: Simple Sentences](#)

[Chapter 4: Wanting and Not Wanting](#)

[Chapter 5: Verbs](#)

[Chapter 6: More Verbs](#)

[Chapter 7: Asking Questions](#)

[Chapter 8: More Questions](#)

[Chapter 9: Adjectives](#)

[Chapter 10: More Adjectives](#)

[Chapter 11: Colors](#)

[Chapter 12: Numbers](#)

[Chapter 13: More Numbers](#)

[Chapter 14: Negative Sentences](#)

[Chapter 15: Korean Markers](#)

[Chapter 16: Telling Time](#)

[Chapter 17: Shopping](#)

[Chapter 18: Relationships](#)

[Chapter 19: Informal Korean](#)

[Chapter 20: Past Tense](#)

[Answer Keys](#)

[Appendix A. – Typing in Korean](#)

[Appendix B. – Hangul Chart and Names of Letters](#)

[Appendix C. – Sound Change Rules](#)

[Informal Korean Conversations](#)

[Special Thanks](#)

## Glossary

## Preface

So you've decided to learn Korean! I congratulate you on your decision, and welcome you on your new journey. As for me, I first learned Korean while living in Korea in 2005. Upon returning home, I chose to major in Korean at my university in 2008, and it's been nonstop fun ever since. I'm happy with my decision to pursue Korean education as a career, and hope to be able to help many others see their Korean abilities improve as we study this wonderful language together here in this book.



### What to Expect

This book was designed with you, the learner, in mind. As such, I'm assuming that you have never studied Korean before, and will begin teaching from the very basic of basics, working our way up from there.

First time language learners, Korean beginners, and curious minds of all ages – yes, even those of you who may think "I'm too old to learn a language" – were in my thoughts while writing this book. This book

was designed specifically for you.

If you've already studied some Korean before, that's great! Don't worry. I have you in mind as well. In addition to covering the basics, I always make sure to add in a little more in each chapter. Through my personal and academic studies of the Korean language, I'm finding the majority of resources out there for teaching Korean often fail to present concepts in their correct forms – to put it simply, I find lots of mistakes in Korean being taught in other textbooks and on web sites. As such, it's likely that you'll learn something new through this book, even if you've already studied Korean before up to any level.

Concepts are laid out in their simplest way possible at first, for the beginner. "Advanced Notes" sprinkled throughout each chapter add information that beginning Korean courses might not teach at first, but are still important. Sometimes these will even contain advanced-level material if I feel that it's something that even beginners should know. "Culture Notes" will deepen your understanding of the Korean language, because you can't speak Korean well without knowing a thing or two about Korean culture. I didn't even know where Korea was on a map before I started studying the language (Note to self: North and South Korea are very different!).

Do not expect to be speaking fluent Korean by the end of this book. There is simply too much that needs to be covered before you will be able to converse in Korean without any difficulties. However, I promise that if you follow this book well and practice what you learn, you will be able to gain quite an extensive introductory knowledge of the Korean language through this book. And, you will be able to fill in the gaps that most Korean learners face later on in their studies.

And I'll be there the whole way, holding your hand through each lesson – figuratively, of course. I'm not really going to hold your hand the whole time (I'm sorry, but that's just creepy).

## How to Use This Book

This book builds upon itself with each chapter. I recommend that you take your time going through each lesson, in order. Don't move on to the next section until you feel comfortable with the last one. Each lesson builds upon knowledge learned from the previous one, so skipping a lesson could lead to problems understanding concepts in later lessons; this negative result would obviously compound the more lessons you skip. In short, do all of the lessons and all of the exercises in order, or at least do all of the lessons if you're in a rush and feel confident enough to skip the Practice sections.

If this is your first time learning Korean, I recommend reading each "Culture Notes" section, but skipping the "Advanced Notes" sections, as these are not designed for first time learners. If this isn't your first time studying Korean, I recommend reading the additional "Advanced Notes" in each chapter. In addition, if you've already read this book once before, I would also recommend reading the "Advanced Notes" sections on your second time through.

As you complete each chapter, refer frequently to the vocabulary lists in the back of the chapter, or the Glossary in the back of this book as necessary. If you are having trouble understanding a sentence, or creating a sentence for the Practice sections, it might only be due to not knowing the appropriate vocabulary word.

Take notes along the way as you complete each chapter. Practice reading, writing, and speaking as much as possible. If you have a friend who can speak Korean, practice speaking and listening frequently.

In addition, if you notice a grammar form you are not familiar with, I would recommend proceeding through the book more slowly. This book builds upon itself, so if you have missed something, and if it does not appear in the chapter you are currently reading, it may have been



skipped from a previous chapter. There is no need to rush through the basics of the Korean language. It will take time to become familiar with using the Korean alphabet, and to become used to hearing the sounds of the language – this is normal. Once you have learned the basics, it will become much easier, and faster, to move forward and acquire new concepts.

## **How to Study Korean**

I'm not the authority on how your brain will learn this language the best, but I do have a few suggestions. Try some of them, and use what works for you.

- 1. Quiz yourself frequently on words you are learning, or have somebody else quiz you.**
- 2. Force yourself to create sentences using the words and grammar forms that you are learning.**
- 3. If you are fortunate enough to live in an area with many Koreans (such as in Korea, or a major city), make friends and practice speaking the language as much as possible.**
- 4. Keep a regular study schedule. Even if you only have 30 minutes a day, 5 days a week, stick to it. 30 minutes a day for 5 days is better than studying 150 minutes at once. Shorter, frequent study is also easier to manage if you have a busy schedule.**
- 5. Write vocabulary words you learn on sticky notes, and place them over things and places that they correspond to. For example, you can write the Korean word for "pencil" on your favorite pencil, or the word for "friend" on your best friend's forehead.**
- 6. Grammar is more important than vocabulary. A beginner with a**

**strong understanding of basic Korean grammar will sound worlds better than a walking dictionary that can't construct a coherent sentence.**

## **7. Brush Up Your English Grammar.**

**"This is a Korean book! Why do I have to learn English grammar?" Many concepts in Korean are much easier to explain and understand if you have a basic grasp of English grammar. Could you learn that the Korean word 사과 meant "apple" in English, without knowing the English word "apple" beforehand? As such, you'll need to be familiar with words such as verb, adjective, noun, and others, in order to better learn the Korean language. Here are a few English concepts I use in this book which you should be at least familiar with before starting:**

**Subject / Object / Noun / Adjective / Adverb / Verb**

**I'll also be covering necessary grammar words as they come up throughout the book, but knowing what they are in advance will help make concepts easier to digest once we get there.**

**Welcome to Korean and Korea**



**To everyone who's learning for their first time, welcome! To everyone else, welcome back! Before we dive into the language, it's important to first know a few things about the country that speaks it.**

**Korea is located to the west of Japan, and it shares a border with the eastern part of China.**

**Originally, Korea was one country, but the end of the Korean War in 1953 resulted in the two sides separating into North Korea and South Korea. "Why?" To put it simply, North Korea and South Korea had some serious disagreements that led to the Korean War starting in the first place.**

**Both North Koreans and South Koreans speak the same Korean language, but decades of being divided from each other caused separate dialects to emerge, and the way each country spoke the same language began to become more different. For comparison, you can think of North Korean speech to South Korean speech as being what British English is to American English; people from both countries can**

understand each other fine, but have their own distinct differences in pronunciation, and vocabulary.

For this book (and like most other Korean language books), we will be learning the Korean language as spoken in South Korea. But before we dive into Korean, let's start by learning a little bit about the country of South Korea.

- Full name: **대한민국** (shortened to **한국**)

- Population: 50 million

- Current capital: Seoul

- Language: Korean – of course!

Korea shares a lot of its history with its neighbor, China. A large portion of the Korean vocabulary originally came from Chinese as well, although the sounds of these words were changed as they were brought into Korea. Still, although Korea has adopted much of its vocabulary from Chinese, and some of its grammar from Japanese, it is unrelated to either languages; Korean is completely unique from any other language. This makes it even more interesting.

We'll be learning to speak Korean through this book, as well as read and write it. If you can't yet read or write Korean, no worries! We'll be covering everything about the written language in the next few sections.

Approximately 80 million people speak Korean natively worldwide. Including non-native speakers, and people currently learning to speak Korean (such as yourself), that number is much larger.

## Korean Sentence Structure

The Korean language works differently from other languages. For comparison, let's take a look at a simple sentence in English:

"I kicked the ball."

The English language uses a S.V.O. sentence structure – Subject, Verb, and Object. This means that the subject comes first ("I"), followed by the verb ("kicked"), and then the object ("the ball").

However, the Korean language uses a S.O.V. sentence structure – Subject, Object, and Verb.

Here's the same sentence written again, but using Korean sentence structure:

"I ball kicked."  
저는 볼 차입니다.

You'll see in future lessons how sentence structure works, and it's not that complicated once you've practiced with it. As I mentioned, there are over 80 million people speaking Korean currently, and I'm sure that you can learn it as well.

Why Korean?

But why are you learning Korean?

- Business?
- Travel?
- Making friends?
- Dating?
- For fun?
- "Because I can, that's why."

All of these are great reasons to study Korean. No matter your reason, you've truly chosen a fun, interesting, and useful language. I hope that this book will help you reach your own goals for learning Korean.

### Note About the **ㄴ다** Form

If this is your first time learning Korean and you have never heard of the **ㄴ다** form before, you can feel free to skip this section and begin learning the Korean alphabet. I would like to discuss my usage of the **ㄴ다** form in this book.

This book has been designed to help people to learn the Korean language clearly and correctly, including proper grammar rules, and is not a phrase book. As such, I've chosen to introduce the **ㄴ다** form (a very polite way of speaking) first and foremost in this book, and only introduce the **요** form (used for the majority of informal speaking) toward the end, beginning with Chapter 19.

As a disclaimer, the **ㄴ다** form is not commonly used in real, regular Korean conversations. This is because it is a formal form, and is used most often for formal and business situations. I also discuss this in detail, including when to use the **ㄴ다** form, in Chapter 19. In addition, the **ㄴ다** form can sound awkward when used to friends or to people who are younger than the speaker. Regardless, I felt it was best to introduce it first for several reasons.

However, the **ㄴ다** form has several advantages over the **요** form for first time students of the Korean language.

1. It's simpler to learn, helping to ease the learner into Korean, to save mental resources for focusing on adjusting to the Korean alphabet and grammar.
2. It's better to be too polite than to be rude.

3. Students who have just begun studying Korean will likely not be able to hold a full conversation, so knowing the ㄹ form is unnecessary for introductory concepts.

While some students of Korean who have already passed the basics may see the ㄴ|다 form as useless, or counterproductive to learning Korean, I strongly believe that it is not, and decided to structure the book in this way after intensely comparing the options.

While studying the ㄹ form first can help to adjust the learner to conjugating and using it, it has its own share of problems that I feel outweighs its benefits – at least in the beginning.

1. It requires knowledge of several rules in order to conjugate. This can be intimidating to first time learners.

2. Although it is not rude in itself, when used in situations where formality is required, the ㄹ form can sound rude.

3. It should not be used to ask questions to people who are older. As such, the learner must also learn honorific grammar and vocabulary in order to properly speak using the ㄹ form.

Nevertheless, I understand the importance of knowing the ㄹ form in order to hold a real conversation in Korean. Although it is introduced late (Chapter 19), I have included every conversation from every chapter re-written using the ㄹ form in the back of this book, for practice and also for study.

My ultimate goal is for this book to give you a comprehensive introduction to the Korean language – consider it a solid stone step up a tall mountain. I hope that you can trust my methods long enough to be able to take over on your own.

**Good luck in your language learning, and feel free to contact me with any questions or comments at any time (just please don't call me late at night when I'm sleeping).**



# Introduction to Hangul

## What is Hangul?

"Hangul" is the name of the writing system used all throughout Korea, both in South Korea and in North Korea. Specifically, it's an alphabet, meaning that it's made up of consonants and vowels, just like the English language.

Before the 1500s in Korea, there was no way of writing the Korean language. Instead, wealthy and educated Koreans would simply learn Chinese if they wanted to read and write. Because the Chinese language could only be studied by those with money and prestige, the majority of Korea was unfortunately illiterate. But all of this changed with the creation of the Korean alphabet, known as Hangul.

Hangul was introduced to Korea in 1446 by King Sejong (세종) who also happens to be one of the most famous people in all of Korean history. This event was extremely important in the development of the Korean language, and allowed even the poorest Korean to read and write due to Hangul's simplicity.



## Do I Need to Learn Hangul?

The short answer is "yes." The long answer is also "yes." The only truly reliable way of writing and reading the Korean language is through Hangul. Although there are ways of using the English alphabet to spell Korean words, none of these are perfect, and all have their flaws – Hangul is the only true way of learning to correctly read and write Korean.

There are several systems available for writing the Korean language with the English alphabet, and yet none of them can correctly capture the sound, spelling, and meaning of the original word written at the same time.

For example, take the Korean word 독립 ("Independence Gate"). Depending on which system you are using, it could be written as Dongnimmun, Toklipmun, or even Dog-Rib-Moon, among several others. While one system might preserve the actual sound of the word (Dongnimmun), it loses the original spelling in the process. A different system may preserve the original spelling (Toklipmun), but loses the actual sound. And while another system may preserve the original spelling and the original sound (Dog-Rib-Moon), it looks completely silly. In short, there is no substitute for learning to read and write Hangul.

### Hangul is an Alphabet

Fortunately for you, Hangul is simple. As I mentioned, it's an alphabet. As such, you only need to learn the letters in order to be able to construct every sound possible in the Korean language.

Although Hangul might look like complex symbols, such as Chinese, each syllable is composed of simple consonants and vowels. There are 10 unique vowels and 14 basic consonants in Hangul, making a total of 24 letters (contrast this with English which has 26 letters). Just like in English, consonants combine with vowels to form syllables, and words.

Syllables are written one letter at a time, and letters are written in order from left to right, and top to bottom.

Each syllable is written as a single block. For example, the word 한글 ("Hangul") is made up of two separate blocks, which are actually separate syllables – 한 and 글. The first syllable, 한, is made of three letters (ㅎ, ㅏ, and ㄴ). The second syllable, 글, is also made of three letters (ㄱ, ㅡ, and ㄹ). Although we haven't learned what these letters mean yet, for now take note that letters – vowels and consonants – combine to form blocks of syllables. These syllables then combine to form words and sentences.

I'll be with you through our entire process of learning Hangul and the Korean language in this book. Take your time with these lessons, and learn each new letter as well as you can. Having a solid grasp of Hangul will greatly help you later on with the lessons, as well as with your own personal goals of mastering the Korean language.

### Basic Consonants and Vowels

Before we start covering all of the different letters, let's first take a look at the basic structure of Hangul. To begin, we'll take a look at three consonants and one vowel. We'll learn how to combine consonants with vowels to create our first syllables.



Type: Consonant

Pronunciation: This is similar to a "k" or "g." However, it is not strong like a "k" in "kite," nor is it strong like a "g" in "great." It's a bit softer, and somewhere between a "k" and a "g." To keep things simple, let's

call it a "g."

**Number of Strokes: 1**

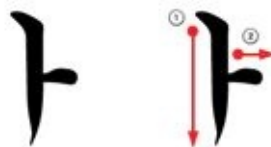
**Stroke Order:** Starting from the top left, draw a single line to the right, and without lifting your writing instrument, curve down.

### What is Stroke Order?

Before going any further, let's take a moment to talk about stroke order. Every letter in Korean has a certain order in which it must be drawn. Think of stroke order like following a recipe; although you know what the end result should be, you have to make sure you get there by adding ingredients in the right order. Having proper stroke order is essential to producing good, legible Korean letters. Incorrect stroke order can easily result in the letter looking like something else – take my word on this for now.

It is much easier to learn proper stroke order in the beginning than to try to fix it later. Take care to practice proper stroke order from the beginning and you will thank me later.

Since it's difficult to compare the Korean alphabet with English sounds (such as in the above letter ㅏ), all sounds in this book will be compared to American English as it is the most widely taught and used version of English internationally.



**Type: Vowel**

**Pronunciation:** This is similar to an "a," as in the word "law" or "car."

You can also think of it as the "ah" sound you might say when you've realized something.

**Number of Strokes: 2**

**Stroke Order:** Starting from the top, draw a single line down. Then draw a second, shorter line beginning from the middle of the first, going to the right.



**Type: Consonant**

**Pronunciation:** This is similar to an "n," such as in the word "now."

**Number of Strokes: 1**

**Stroke Order:** Starting from the top, draw a line down, and without lifting your writing instrument, continue drawing to the right.



**Type: Consonant**

**Pronunciation:** This is similar to a "t" or "d." However, it is not strong like a "t" in "ten," nor is it strong like a "d" in "dog." It's a bit softer, and somewhere between a "t" and a "d." To keep things simple, let's call it a "d."

**Number of Strokes: 2**

**Stroke Order:** Starting from the top left, draw a single line to the right. Start a second line from the left end of the first line, moving down then right, just like you did earlier when drawing ㄣ.

**Making Syllables**

Now that we've got a few consonants and a vowel to work with, let's try making some syllables. Remember that a syllable, just like in English, consists of at least one vowel and at least one consonant.

Try to see what the following syllables will sound like, before reading their explanations. You can do this by covering the right side of the page as you complete each one.

ㄱ + ㅏ = ?

Answer: "ga"

ㄴ + ㅏ = ?

Answer: "na"

ㄷ + ㅏ = ?

Answer: "da"

Remember that ㄱ is not a strong "k" or a strong "g," and ㄷ is not a strong "t" or a strong "d." These sounds are softer, and somewhere between these two sounds.

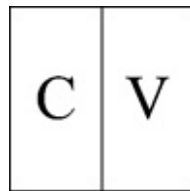
As you can already see, many sounds in Korean do not have exact English equivalents. This is why it's best to learn Korean through Hangul, instead of through writing the language with English or another writing system. Being able to pronounce Hangul correctly will greatly improve your overall Korean pronunciation.

But syllables in Hangul aren't written like "ㄱ + ㅏ," so we need to learn the proper way to write them. Remember that Hangul uses blocks of syllables to create words. These blocks are formed in a few ways. Let's take a look at what the above examples would look like written in Hangul as real syllable blocks.

가 / 나 / 다

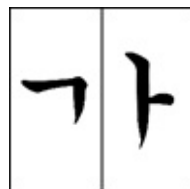
Each of these syllable blocks contains at least one consonant and at least one vowel. Since these are our first basic syllables, they each contain only one consonant and only one vowel. Later on we'll learn how to make more complex syllables using more letters.

Notice also how each of these is written – the consonant is on the left, and the vowel is on the right. This is due to the vowel that we used. The vowel that is used in a consonant will determine the way that a syllable block is written. For vertical vowels, such as ㅏ in the above examples, here's the block form used to write them.



For block forms represented in this book, "C" represents a consonant and "V" represents a vowel.

Let's re-write our first example (ㄱ + ㅏ) as a real syllable using the above block form.



This is what we get, but it looks a bit awkward, kind of like a robot wrote it. To make it more natural, the ㄱ is stretched out longer to make it match closer to the height of the ㅏ. Here's how it will be written:



And just as English will have different ways of writing the alphabet (different styles or fonts), Korean will too. This is another reason why it's important to learn the right stroke order. As long as you know the correct stroke order for a letter, you will be able to read Hangul written in any possible style.

Before moving on, practice writing a few syllables on your own.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--



Type: Consonant

Pronunciation: This is pronounced like an "m," as in the word "mother."

Number of Strokes: 3

Stroke Order: Starting from the top left, draw a single line down. Start a second line from the top of the first line, going to the right and then downward like drawing a ㄴ. Start the third line from the bottom of the first line, going to the right and connecting with the second line.

Be especially careful with the stroke order on ㅁ, as drawing it the wrong order (or just drawing a square) can easily cause it to appear as a different letter (ㅇ, which we will learn soon).





**Type: Consonant**

**Pronunciation:** This is similar to a "p" or "b." However, it is not strong like a "p" in "park," nor is it strong like a "b" in "bat." It's a bit softer, and somewhere between a "p" and a "b." To keep things simple, let's call it a "b."

**Number of Strokes: 4**

**Stroke Order:** Starting from the top left, draw a single line down. Start a second line parallel to the first, from the top, also going down. Start a third line from the middle of the first line, going to the right and connecting to the middle of the second line. Start a fourth line from the bottom of the first line, going to the right and connecting to the bottom of the second line.



**Type: Consonant**

**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced like "s," such as in the word "snake."

**Number of Strokes: 2**

**Stroke Order:** Starting from the top, draw a slightly curved line down sideways and to the left. Start a second line, also slightly curved, from the top of the first line, going sideways and to the right. Both lines should curve inward.



**Type: Consonant**

**Pronunciation:** This is similar to a "ch" or "j." However, it is not strong like a "ch" in "cherry," nor is it strong like a "j" in "job." It's a bit softer, and somewhere between a "ch" and a "j." To keep things simple, let's call it a "j."

**Number of Strokes:** 3

**Stroke Order:** Starting from the top left, draw a line to the right. Start a second line from the middle of the first line, going down and to the left. Start a third line again from the middle of the first line, going down and to the right. You can think of this letter as a flat line sitting on top of a ㄷ. Just like ㄷ, make sure to curve the two bottom lines inward slightly.

**Advanced Notes:**



You might also see this letter written in the above way; either way is fine. To draw it this way, start the first stroke the same way, but begin the second line from the right end of the first line. The third stroke will then instead begin from the middle of the second stroke. Here, the second stroke will curve, just like for ㄷ, but the third stroke will curve in the opposite direction. Feel free to write this letter either way you'd prefer.



**Type:** Consonant

**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced similar to an "h," as in the word "hall."

**Number of Strokes:** 3

**Stroke Order:** Starting from the top, draw a short line downward. Start the second stroke on the left, going to the right, and connecting with the first stroke in the middle. The third stroke is simply a circle, but you

should start drawing it from the very top, going counterclockwise.

This consonant might remind you of a stick figure's head wearing a pointed hat.

#### Advanced Notes:



You might also see this letter written in the above way; either way is fine. To draw it this way, start the first stroke by going parallel to the second stroke, instead of perpendicular to it. The rest is completed the same way.



Type: Vowel

Pronunciation: This is pronounced like an "o," as in the word "old."

Number of Strokes: 2

Stroke Order: Starting from the top, draw a short line downward. Start the second stroke on the left, going to the right, and connecting with the first stroke in the middle. It will look like the top part of **ㅊ**, only larger.

When you say this vowel, your lips will round into an "o" shape.

Now that we've introduced this new vowel (ㅡ), there's an additional block form we can use to create syllables with. Previously, we learned the following method for vertical vowels, such as **ㅏ**.

C	V
---	---

But now we can also make syllables using horizontal vowels, such as ㅏ. Here's what that block form would look like:

C
V

Using this format, let's take the letters ㅁ ("m") and ㅏ ("o") and combine them together. This would then be pronounced as "mo."

ㅁ
ㅏ

This can then be written on its own to look like:

모

### Reading Practice

Using every letter that we've covered so far (ㄱ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㄷ, ㅌ, ㄴ, ㄹ, ㅍ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅊ, ㅊ), let's make some new syllables. Try to read them on your own before looking at the explanations.

ㄱ + ㅏ = ㅑ

Answer: "go"

ㄱ + ㅏ = 가

Answer: "ga"

ㄴ + ㅏ = 노

Answer: "no"

ㄴ + ㅓ = 나

Answer: "na"

ㄷ + ㅏ = 도

Answer: "do"

ㄷ + ㅓ = 다

Answer: "da"

ㅁ + ㅏ = 모

Answer: "mo"

ㅁ + ㅓ = 마

Answer: "ma"

ㅂ + ㅏ = 보

Answer: "bo"

ㅂ + ㅓ = 바

Answer: "ba"

ㅈ + ㅏ = 조

Answer: "jo"

ㅈ + ㅓ = 자

Answer: "ja"

ㅊ + ㅏ = 초

Answer: "so"

ㅊ + ㅓ = 차

Answer: "sa"

ㅎ + ㅏ = 호

Answer: "ho"

ㅎ + ㅓ = 하

Answer: "ha"

Above is every possible combination of two-letter syllables that we can make using only the letters that what we've learned so far.

Practice writing your own syllables below, using what we've learned so far.



### More Consonants

Believe it or not, we've almost finished learning all of the basic consonants in Hangul. There are just two more, which we'll cover now.



Type: Consonant

Pronunciation: This is pronounced like an "l" sound, such as in the word "long." However, when you say ㄹ, position your tongue as if you were saying a "d" (such as in "dog") – then say "l" instead. It will come out sounding like a cross between an "l" and an "r," and this is exactly what you will want it to sound like.

Number of Strokes: 3

Stroke Order: Starting from the top left, draw a single line to the right, and without lifting your writing instrument, curve down – just like ㄴ. Start the second line, a single straight line going from left to right and connecting at the end of the first line. The third line will start from the

left side of the second line, going downward, then to the right – just like when drawing ㄴ.

Although it may be tempting, do not write this letter with one stroke. It's essential to maintain the correct stroke order. Even if the end result might appear similar to you, it will not look correct to the trained eye of a native Korean speaker.



**Type:** Consonant

**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced "ng," such as in the word "song" or "hang," but only when ㅇ is used at the end of a syllable.

**Number of Strokes:** 1

**Stroke Order:** Start from the top, and draw a circle going counterclockwise (just like you did for ㅇ).

Although ㅇ is pronounced "ng" at the end of a syllable, when it's used at the beginning of a syllable it has no sound. We'll go over how to use this letter in detail soon.

## Vowel Sounds

So far we've learned how to combine consonants with vowels to form syllable blocks, but what if we want to have a vowel sound by itself? What if we only want to say the sound that ㅣ makes?

We learned that a syllable must have at least one consonant and one vowel. In this case, we can use ㅇ as the consonant, which has no sound when used at the beginning of a syllable (its "ng" sound only applies when ㅇ appears at the end of a syllable, which we will cover soon).

ㅇ + ㅏ = 아

Answer: "a"

ㅇ + ㅗ = 오

Answer: "o"

Remember that it would be incorrect to write ㅏ or ㅗ on their own, because every syllable in Korean must have at least one consonant and one vowel.

### Quick Reading Practice

Practice reading the following syllables. Just as before, first try reading them on your own before looking at their answers.

ㄹ + ㅗ = 로

Answer: "lo"

ㅇ + ㅗ = 오

Answer: "o"

ㄹ + ㅏ = 라

Answer: "la"

ㅇ + ㅏ = 아

Answer: "a"

### Three Letter Syllables

Up until now we've only been working with syllables using two letters – one consonant and one vowel. We need to learn how to make syllables with two consonants and one vowel. Let's look at the syllable blocks we can use to do this.

Like before, the type of syllable block you will choose depends on whether you're using a vertical vowel (such as ㅏ) or a horizontal vowel (such as ㅗ).



For vertical vowels, we have this syllable block:

C	V
C	

And for horizontal vowels, we have this syllable block:

C
V
C

Let's take a look at some examples of various three letter syllables. Try to guess what they will sound like on your own first, before looking at the answers.

ㄹ + ㅣ + ㅇ = 랑

Answer: "lang"

ㄱ + ㅣ + ㄴ = 간

Answer: "gan"

ㅁ + ㅏ + ㅁ = 몸

Answer: "mom"

ㅇ + ㅣ + ㅇ = 앙

Answer: "ang"

ㅇ + ㅓ + ㅇ = 옹

Answer: "ong"

ㄴ + ㅓ + ㄹ = 놀

Answer: "nol"

ㅅ + ㅓ + ㄴ = 손

Answer: "son"

ㄴ + ㅣ + ㄱ = 낙

Answer: "nag"

ㄷ + ㅏ + ㅂ = 답

Answer: "dab"

ㅈ + ㅓ + ㅊ = 죽

Answer: "jog"

## More Vowels

We've done everything so far using only two vowels, ㅏ and ㅓ. Let's go over some more vowels we can use to expand our Korean.

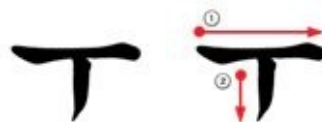


Type: Vowel

Pronunciation: The vowel this sound makes is similar to "uh" – as if you're thinking of something. You can also think of it as the "uh" sound at the beginning of the word "up."

Number of Strokes: 2

Stroke Order: Starting from the left, draw a short line going to the right, which will touch the middle of the second line. Draw a longer second line from the top, going down.



Type: Vowel

Pronunciation: This is pronounced like the "u" sound in the word "glue."

Number of Strokes: 2

**Stroke Order:** Starting from the left, draw a line to the right. Start a second line from the middle of the first line, going down.



**Type:** Vowel

**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced like "oo" in the word "good."

**Number of Strokes:** 1

**Stroke Order:** Start from the left and draw a single straight line to the right.



**Type:** Vowel

**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced like "ee" in the word "tree."

**Number of Strokes:** 1

**Stroke Order:** Start from the top and draw a single straight line down.

### More Practice

Try to read the following syllables on your own before reading their pronunciation.

ㅁ + ㅏ = ㅓ

Answer: "muh"

ㄱ + ㅓ = ㄱㅓ

Answer: "gu"

ㅂ + ㅡ = 브

Answer: "boo" ("oo" as in "good")

ㅎ + ㅣ = 히

Answer: "hee"

ㅅ + ㅣ

When you combine ㅅ with ㅣ you get a slightly different result than what you might expect. Instead of becoming "see" (like the English word) it actually becomes "shee" (like the word "she" in English).

ㅅ + ㅣ = 시

Answer: "shee"

ㅅ + ㅣ + ㄴ = 신

Answer: "sheen"

ㅅ + ㅣ + ㄹ = 실

Answer: "sheel"

ㅅ + ㅣ + ㅇ = 싱

Answer: "sheeng"

ㅅ + ㅣ + ㅁ = 심

Answer: "sheem"

ㅅ + ㅣ + ㄱ = 식

Answer: "sheeg"

ㅅ + ㅣ + ㅃ = 십

Answer: "sheeb"

Practice writing a few syllables using the following block forms.


<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>

## Your First Korean Words

We've covered several consonants and vowels, and now it's time to start learning some real words (just a few). We'll actually be going over these words again later in the lessons (so don't stress too much about memorizing them), but take a moment to look over them here and become familiar with as many of them as you can. Just like before, try reading them on your own before looking at the answers.

한글 "Hangul" (the Korean alphabet)

Answer: "han-gool" ("oo" as in "good")

한국 - "Korea"

Answer: "han-guk" ("u" as in "glue")

저 - "I" or "me"

Answer: "juh"

당신 - "You"

Answer: "dang-sheen"

## More Vowels

Let's continue learning the rest of the vowels in 한글



**Type:** Vowel

**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced like the "e" in the word "egg." You can also think of it as an "eh" sound.

**Number of Strokes:** 3

**Stroke Order:** Start from the left, drawing a short line to the right (this will touch the middle of the second line). The second line starts from the top, going down and perpendicular to the first line. Begin the third line from the top, parallel to the second line, going down.



**Type:** Vowel

**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced like the "a" in the word "apple."

**Number of Strokes:** 3

**Stroke Order:** Start from the top left, drawing a line straight down. Draw the second line starting from the middle of the first line, going to the right (this will touch the middle of the third line, connecting the middles of the first and third line together). Draw the third line parallel to the first line, starting from the top and going down.

ㅏ is only slightly different from ㅐ in sound, and actually the difference is not extremely important. Even many Koreans are not able to distinguish them by sound (but will be able to distinguish the spelling). Therefore, although ㅏ is slightly different from ㅐ, feel free to pronounce ㅏ the same way as ㅐ ("eh") until you are more

comfortable with distinguishing it.



**Type:** Vowel

**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced like "ya," such as in the expression "ya'll."

**Number of Strokes:** 3

**Stroke Order:** Start from the top, drawing a line straight down. Draw the second line starting from 1/3 down the first line, going to the right. Draw the third line starting from 2/3 down the first line, also going to the right, and parallel to the second line.

You can also think of this vowel as being | combined with ʃ ("ee" + "a" = "ya").



**Type:** Vowel

**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced "yo," like the slang word "yo."

**Number of Strokes:** 3

**Stroke Order:** Start from the top and draw a line down (this will connect at the point 1/3 of the way to the right on the third line). Begin the second line parallel to the first, going down (this will connect at the point 2/3 of the way to the right on the third line). Draw the third line from left to right, connecting at the end of the first and second lines. Except for having a different stroke order, this letter is a

ㅌ turned on its back.

You can also think of this vowel as being ㅣ combined with ㅛ ("ee" + "o" = "yo").

### More Practice

Try to read the following syllables on your own before looking at their pronunciations.

ㅇ + ㅓ = 에

Answer: "e" ("e" in "egg")

ㅇ + ㅕ = 애

Answer: "e" (the "a" sound in "apple")

ㅇ + ㅗ = 야

Answer: "ya"

ㅇ + ㅠ = 요

Answer: "yo"

ㄱ + ㅓ = 게

Answer: "ge"

ㄱ + ㅗ = 가

Answer: "gya"

ㄱ + ㅠ = 교

Answer: "gyo"

ㄴ + ㅓ = 네

Answer: "le"

ㄴ + ㅗ = 라

Answer: "la"

ㄴ + ㅠ = 료

Answer: "lyo"

ㅈ + ㅓ = 재

Answer: "je"

ㅈ + ㅗ = 자

Answer: "jya"



ㅈ + ㅟ = 죠

Answer: "jyo"

ㅈ + ㅓ = 샤

Answer: "shya"\*

ㅈ + ㅜ = 쇼

Answer: "shyo"\*

\*ㅈ will actually become "sh" not only before ㅣ, but also before ㅓ and ㅜ.

Let's start taking a look at some examples that are a bit longer.

ㅇ + ㅓ + ㅓ + ㅓ + ㅓ + ㅣ + ㅈ + ㅟ = 엘쏘

Answer: "el-bee-soo" ("oo" as in "good")

ㅎ + ㅓ + ㅇ + ㅣ + ㅓ = 헤엄

Answer: "he-uhm"

ㅇ + ㅓ + ㄱ + ㅈ + ㅓ = 에게

Answer: "eg-je"

ㅓ + ㅓ + ㄱ + ㅈ + ㅓ = 메쥬

Answer: "meg-ju"

ㅈ + ㅓ + ㄴ + ㅓ + ㅇ = 샹

Answer: "sa-nyang"

ㄴ + ㅓ + ㅓ + ㄴ + ㅓ + ㅓ = 냐냐

Answer: "nyam-nyam"

ㅇ + ㅟ + ㄱ + ㅈ + ㅓ = 욱

Answer: "yog-jo"

ㅎ + ㅓ + ㄱ + ㄱ + ㅟ = 화

Answer: "hag-gyo"

ㅎ + ㅟ + ㅈ + ㅣ + ㅇ = 쯡

Answer: "hyo-juhng"

Goodbye Romanization

"It's not you. It's me." As you've probably noticed already, writing

Korean using Romanization (using the English alphabet) is a bit messy, and as we go on it will grow even further away from the actual Korean sounds. This is why from now on, there will be no more Romanization used in this book, with the exception of teaching pronunciation of new sounds. By the start of Chapter 1, it will be completely absent from this book.

It's important to become comfortable with how 한글 actually sounds, and to steer away from writing or even reading the sounds written with the English alphabet.

It might be a bit difficult at first, but I promise you that your Korean will improve much more by learning the language exclusively through 한글

Now let's continue learning the rest of the letters in 한글

### New Vocabulary

Let's go over just a few more words that we can learn using the letters we know so far. Like before, don't stress about memorizing these words, as we'll be covering them again later in this book.

네 "yes"

아니요 - "no"

개 "dog"

고양이 - "cat"

용 - "dragon"

### Vowels.... Again?

We're almost at the finish line. We can see the light at the end of the tunnel. There are only a few more vowels left in 한글 to learn.



**Type:** Vowel

**Pronunciation:** This is a combination of a "y" sound with ㅏ, so it is pronounced like "yuh."

**Number of Strokes:** 3

**Stroke Order:** Draw a short line from left to right (this line will connect 1/3 down the third line). Draw a second line below, parallel to the first, going from left to right (this line will connect 2/3 down the third line). Draw the third line starting from the top, going straight down and touching the first two lines.

Knowing how to pronounce ㅏ will make pronouncing this letter simple. You can also think of this vowel as being ㅣ combined with ㅏ ("ee" + "uh" = "yuh").

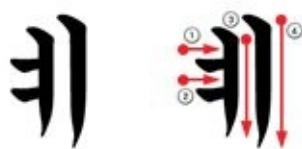


**Type:** Vowel

**Pronunciation:** This is a combination of a "y" sound with ㅓ, so it is pronounced "yu" (like the English word "you").

**Number of Strokes:** 3

**Stroke Order:** Start from the top left, drawing a line to the right. Begin the second line from the point 1/3 of the way to the right on the first line. Begin the third line parallel to the second from the point 2/3 of the way to the right on the first line, going down. Except for having a different stroke order, this letter is a ㅓ turned upside down.



**Type: Vowel**

**Pronunciation:** This is a combination of a "y" sound with ㄹ, so it is pronounced "ye."

**Number of Strokes: 4**

**Stroke Order:** First draw a ㄹ, then draw a ㄹ parallel to the right of it.

You can also think of this vowel as being ㄹ combined with ㄹ ("ee" + "eh" = "yeh").



**Type: Vowel**

**Pronunciation:** This is a combination of a "y" sound with ㄹ, so it is pronounced "ye."

**Number of Strokes: 4**

**Stroke Order:** First draw a ㄹ, then draw a ㄹ parallel to the right of it.

You can also think of this vowel as being ㄹ combined with ㄹ ("ee" + "eh" = "yeh").

**More Practice**

Try reading the following syllables on your own.

여 / 유 예 / 애 열 윽 레 재 벼 규 / 계 / 개

## Blending Syllables Together

We learned that ㅇ has no sound when at the beginning of a syllable. Because of this, it essentially acts like an empty space. Therefore, whatever letter that comes before it will replace it, as if it never existed.

### 미국인 "an American"

We can read this word as 미 + 국 + 인, right? Yes. But if you wanted to say it at a regular speed, what would happen? Try saying it yourself. Since the ㅇ in the beginning of 인 will have no sound, this allows the sound before it to flow through, taking its place.

미국인 would therefore be said 미구긴 when speaking at a normal speed, to make it easier to pronounce.

Let's take a look at some more examples of this happening.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

백인 → 벵

맨 → 미더

저녁 → 짜미

할매 → 하라매

만이 → 떼

잘 → 거러

밭 → 툼

한옥 → 하늬

애 → 여너

한우 → 하누

Before we move on, practice writing a few syllables using the block

forms we've learned. You can combine any characters that you'd like. The more you practice, the faster you'll be able to write and read, and the better you'll be able to learn Korean.


### Four Letter Syllables

So far we've seen both two letter and three letter syllables. Now let's take a look at syllables that have four letters in them. Here's what the block form will look like for vertical, or for horizontal vowels.

For vertical vowels, we have this syllable block:

C	V
C	C

And for horizontal vowels, we have this syllable block:

C	
V	
C	C

Three consonants and one vowel will come together to form a four letter syllable. Here are some examples using four letter syllables, along with their pronunciations:

#### Spelling → Pronunciation

왔 → 안자

왔 → 일근

왔 → 딸

왔 → 살미

왔 → 딸

왔 → 꿀

왔 → 갑시

왔 → 껌

For syllables that have two consonants on the bottom, one of them being ㄹ, and which are not followed by any other letter which might affect the pronunciation (such as being followed by ㅇ, allowing the sound to simply pass through), most of the time the consonant which is not ㄹ will be pronounced.

Some combinations you will see often are ㄹㄱ, ㄹㅁ, ㄹㅂ, and ㄹㅎ.

#### Spelling → Pronunciation

왔다 → 왔다

왔 → 삼

왔 → 흑

여왔 → 여덜\*

\*Note that I said most of the time. The above example is a common exception to the rule.

## New Vocabulary

Let's learn some more words. As before, don't worry about memorizing these words as we'll be going over them in later chapters.

안녕하세요. - "Hello."

미국인 - "an American"

한국인 - "a Korean"

삶 "life"

Let's take moment to practice writing some more syllables, using each of the possible forms. Try to make unique characters each time. As this is only practice, feel free to create any combination you'd like, provided it follows the rules for the block forms.

<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>

<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>

<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>

## Moving Forward

Congratulations on learning all of the individual vowels and consonants in Korean. But wait, there's more! We still need to cover double



consonants (when two copies of the same consonant combine together), strong consonants (when a consonant is pronounced with more force) and diphthongs (when more than one vowel combines together). But if you know the vowels and consonants we've learned so far, these should all be a piece of cake. I'll guide you through the next lesson as soon as you're ready to tackle it.

## More Hangul

Take your time on these introductory lessons, and go through them slowly. 한글 can be difficult because it's an alphabet and there are numerous letters and rules to cover, but you'll be using it everywhere once we start learning Korean and it will become second nature. Once you're ready to move on, let's get started and finish learning everything you will need to know about 한글

### Double Consonants

A double consonant is simply two of the same consonant combined together. There are five of them to learn, but they shouldn't be a problem to remember. Let's learn them all at the same time.

ㄱㄱ   ㄷㄷ   ㅂㅂ   ㅅㅅ   ㅈㅈ

Notice how each double consonant is composed of two of the same consonant – ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, and ㅈ. In addition, they're drawn in the same space that one single consonant would normally take up.

**Pronunciation:** Each of these is pronounced the same way as their singular versions, but is spoken by tensing your mouth before saying them.

Before pronouncing a double consonant, take a short, quick pause. This will naturally cause the sound after the pause to come out tensed.

**Stroke Order:** Each of these is drawn the same way as their singular

versions. Draw the left half first, then draw the right half.

For comparison, take a look at the following two syllables:

가 / 까

The left one is somewhere between a "ka" or "ga." Think of 가 as the "k" in the English word "ska" – notice that while saying "ska" the "k" becomes tense because of its position in the word (coming after an "s"). This is what a double consonant sounds like.

다 / 따

Think of 다 as the "t" in the English word "stop."

바 / 뽀

Think of 바 as the "p" in the English word "spa."

샤 / 썸

Think of 샤 as either of the "s" sounds in the English word "seesaw," or "psycho." It's more of a hissing "s" sound than simply saying "snake."

자 / 짜

Think of 자 as the "ch" sound in "got'cha" ("got you").

### Double Consonant Practice

Practice by reading the following sounds.

가 / 까 / 다 / 따 바 / 뽀 샤 / 썸 자 / 짜 고 / 꼬 도 / 똘 보 / 뽕 소 / 쑥 조 / 쪼

## New Vocabulary

Let's take a look at a few examples of words that use double consonants.

딸 "daughter"

빵 "bread"

쌀 "(uncooked) rice"

꼭 "surely," "certainly"

뿔 "horn(s)"

똥 "poop"

말 "words"

꿀 "honey"

## Strong Consonants

A strong consonant is similar to a normal consonant, but pronounced with more force. Imagine saying 가, but putting more force into your voice when saying the consonant – it would come out sounding more like a strong "k," like the word "kite." This is what a strong consonant is. There are only four to learn. Let's take a look at all of them before we go over them individually.

ㅋ    ㅌ    ㅍ    ㅊ

Three of these four should be simple to learn, as they look similar to their normal versions.

Normal → Strong

ㄱ → ㅋ

ㄷ → ㅌ

ㅍ → ㅍ

ㅈ → ㅊ

### Advanced Notes:

Another word for strong consonant is "aspirated consonant." Depending on what additional sources you use for studying Korean, you might see them referred to in this way.



**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced more strongly than a ㅈ, so you can think of it as a hard "k."

**Number of Strokes:** 2

**Stroke Order:** First draw a ㅈ. Start the second stroke from the left, going right, connecting with the middle of the first stroke.



**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced more strongly than a ㅅ, so you can think of it as a hard "t."

**Number of Strokes:** 3

**Stroke Order:** Draw the first line, on top, going from left to right. Start a second line parallel to the first and below it. Begin the third line from the left side of the first stroke, going down and touching the left side of the second stroke, and continuing a bit further. Without starting a fourth stroke, draw a straight line to the right.

### Advanced Notes:



You might also see this letter written in the above way; either way is fine. To draw it this way, simply draw the third line beginning from the left side of the second stroke. The rest is drawn in the same way.



**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced more strongly than a ㅍ, so you can think of it as a hard "p."

**Number of Strokes:** 4

**Stroke Order:** First draw a line on top, going to the right. Begin the second stroke from the first line, a bit to the right from the far-left side, going down. Start the third stroke also from the first line, parallel to the second, a bit to the left from the far-right side, going down. Draw the fourth line on the bottom, from left to right, touching the second and third strokes.



**Pronunciation:** This is pronounced more strongly than a ㅓ, so you can think of it as a hard "ch."

**Number of Strokes:** 4

**Stroke Order:** First draw a short line from the top middle, going down. Then draw a ㅓ attached to it.

**Advanced Notes:**



You might also see this letter written in the above way; either way is fine. To draw it this way, simply draw the first stroke horizontally instead of vertically, going from left to right. The rest is drawn in the same way as normal.

## Normal Consonants, Double Consonants, and Strong Consonants

Here's a useful trick. You can see the difference between a normal consonant, a double consonant, and a strong consonant by using a piece of paper.

Hold a single sheet of paper out in front of your mouth, and try saying the following three sounds one at a time.

가 / 까 / 카

The **카** should cause the piece of paper to shake. In comparison, the **가** will only cause the piece of paper to wobble slightly. However, the **까** should not cause the piece of paper to move noticeably at all.

This is because strong consonants require more energy to say, and therefore more air to say them. Double consonants, however, are made by taking a short, quick pause before saying them. As a result most of the air released when pronouncing a double consonant is dissipated – the air isn't leaving the mouth in a concentrated burst like it is for normal consonants or strong consonants.

Pay close attention to the different sounds made from normal consonants, double consonants, and strong consonants. Knowing the difference is extremely important, and words can easily be misunderstood if pronounced using the wrong one.

Although **불** means "fire," **뿔** means "horns," and **풀** can mean "grass" or

"glue." Koreans can easily hear the differences between these sounds because they're accustomed to using them on a regular basis, and with practice so can you.

### More Consonant Practice

Practice reading these syllables on your own.

가 / 까 / 카 다 / 따 타 / 바 빠 / 파 짜 찌 차 / 고 / 꼬 쿡 도 / 뭉 토 / 보 / 뽕  
/ 조 / 쪼 초

Practice writing just a few more syllables, using double consonants and strong consonants.


### New Vocabulary

Here are a few new words to read over and practice. Notice how words using normal consonants, double consonants, and strong consonants can each have separate, unrelated meanings.

코 "nose"

털 "hair," "fur" (not on the head)

핸폰 "cell phone" (literally, "hand phone")

검 "sword"

껌 "gum"

춤 "a dance"

컴퓨터 - "computer"

덕 - "moral"

떡 "rice cake"

턱 "chin"



따 - "to cut (into)"  
빼 - "to remove"  
파 - "to beat," "to bash"  
자 - "to sleep"  
짜 - "to be salty"  
차다 - "to kick"

## Diphthongs

What is a diphthong? Well, it's nothing to be afraid of. A diphthong is a combination of more than one vowel into a single new vowel. Imagine taking a 오 sound (ㅗ) and mixing it with a 아 sound (ㅏ) – you'd get a "wa" sound, right? Right! And in Korean, there's an easy way to combine two vowels together into a new vowel. These combinations are called diphthongs.

Let's go over each of them. There are seven in total.



**Pronunciation:** This is a combination of ㅡ and ㅣ. It is pronounced the same way as saying 으 immediately followed by 이, quickly – as in "uh-ee."

**Number of Strokes:** 2

**Stroke Order:** First draw a ㅡ. Next, draw a ㅣ.

Although this diphthong is pronounced "uh-ee" when written as 으, when used with any other consonant besides ㅇ it becomes pronounced the same as ㅣ. For example, 히 is simply pronounced 히.

**Advanced Notes:**

There's also one more situation where **으** is pronounced differently, and that's when it's used as the Possessive Marker. We'll learn about the Possessive Marker in Chapter 11.



**Pronunciation:** This is a combination of **ㅌ** and **ㅏ**. It is pronounced the same way as saying **오** immediately followed by **ㅏ**, quickly – as in "wa."

**Number of Strokes:** 4

**Stroke Order:** First draw a **ㅌ**. Next, draw a **ㅏ**.



**Pronunciation:** This is a combination of **ㅌ** and **ㅔ**. It is pronounced the same way as saying **우** immediately followed by **ㅔ**, quickly – as in "u-uh" or the English word "whoa."

**Number of Strokes:** 4

**Stroke Order:** First draw a **ㅌ**. Next, draw a **ㅔ**.



**Pronunciation:** This is a combination of **ㅌ** and **ㅓ**. It is pronounced the same way as saying **우** immediately followed by **ㅓ**, quickly – as in "u-ee" or the French word "oui."

**Number of Strokes:** 3

**Stroke Order:** First draw a ㄷ. Next, draw a ㅣ.



**Pronunciation:** This is a combination of ㅌ and ㅞ. It is pronounced the same way as saying 오 immediately followed by ㅞ quickly – as in "o-e" or the English word "way."

**Number of Strokes:** 5

**Stroke Order:** First draw a ㅌ. Next, draw a ㅞ.



**Pronunciation:** This is a combination of ㅌ and ㅣ. However, it is pronounced differently than it may look. It is actually pronounced the same way as saying 오 immediately followed by ㅞ, quickly – as in "o-e" or the English word "way." Just like how ㅞ and ㅞ are pronounced similarly, ㅞ and ㅞ are similar as well; feel free to pronounce ㅞ the same way as ㅞ.

**Number of Strokes:** 3

**Stroke Order:** First draw a ㅌ. Next, draw a ㅣ.

### **Advanced Notes:**

You will never see a diphthong that is written combining ㅌ and ㅞ. It can't even be typed on a Korean keyboard. Instead, remember to use either ㅞ or ㅞ when writing.



**Pronunciation:** This is a combination of ㅈ and ㅊ. It is pronounced the same way as saying ㅈ immediately followed by ㅊ, quickly – as in "u-e."

**Number of Strokes:** 5

**Stroke Order:** First draw a ㅈ. Next, draw a ㅊ.

### Practicing Diphthongs

Now that wasn't so bad, right? Practice reading these syllables on your own.

의 / 와 / 워 / 위 / 왜 / 외 / 웨  
희 / 과 / 궤 궤 궤 궤 궤  
괘 봐 줘 뒤 / 돼 뇌 쉼  
환 찰 광 완 관 뵈 윈

### New Vocabulary and Final Practice

Here are a few new words you can learn using diphthongs.

의사 "doctor"

희망 "hope"

과일 - "fruit"

원 - "Won" (the Korean currency)

귀 "ear"

왜 - "why"

열 "key"

웰 "healthy" (literally, "well being")

For a final exercise, before moving onto sound changes, practice

writing 한글 using the following block forms. Try to use different letters for each syllable as much as possible, and incorporate diphthongs in several of them; to keep things simple it might be best at first to practice using diphthongs in syllable blocks with fewer letters (2 or 3).

<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>
<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>	<div></div>

Of course, don't limit your 한글 practice to solely these exercises. Also don't limit yourself to using block forms when writing – they're only for helping you to adjust to the way that 한글 syllables are written. Practice writing in a notebook, on your own, as much as possible. If you have time, I'd also recommend copying down as much as you can from this book as you move through it, such as conversations and example sentences, in order to improve your writing even more.

## Introduction to Sound Changes

Congratulations! We've now finished learning every basic consonant and vowel, every double consonant and strong consonant, and now every diphthong. In fact, there are no more letters left to learn in 한글. What remains are rules regarding how sounds are pronounced. Let me explain what that means.

Take this English sentence: "Nice to meet you."

First say it slowly: "Nice to meet you."

Next, say it at a normal speed: "Nice t' mee'chu."

The individual words haven't changed, but their sounds do because of their relationship to other sounds (for example, the 't' in "meet" coming before the 'y' in "you"). A similar thing happens in Korean. Of course, these changes occurred only to make the words easier to pronounce, just like in English. Imagine having to say "Nice to meet you," while pronouncing each individual word accurately, every time you wanted to say it. Although there are many rules for sound changes in Korean, they are for the good of everyone. Learning the rules for sound changes as thoroughly as possible will greatly improve your speaking and understanding.

This section will introduce only basic sound change rules that are necessary to say individual syllables. For a complete explanation of sound change rules, please read through Appendix C after completing this section (before beginning Chapter 1).

As you learn sound change rules, I recommend reading each example out loud as practice. Don't worry about memorizing any of the words,

as they're only to demonstrate the rules when pronouncing 한글

Let's go over the rules for sound changes in Korean.

### Bottom Consonants



We've actually already been working with syllables that have bottom consonants. Any syllable with three or more letters contains one or two bottom consonants.

A bottom consonant is simply a consonant on the bottom of a syllable. For the syllable 강 it's ㅇ. And for the syllable 삼 they are ㅁ and ㅁ.

Korean has a special word for these bottom consonants – 받침 which literally means "support." Knowing what a syllable's 받침 will help you know how to pronounce it in a sentence.

You might be thinking, "But I already know how to pronounce 강 and 삼. We learned that ㅇ is pronounced like "ng" at the end of a syllable, so 강 is just 강. And 삼 is pronounced 삼." Well, you're right. 강 is just 강 and 삼 is pronounced 삼. Most rules for sound changes only apply when syllables are combined together with others in a sentence, just like the individual words in "Nice to meet you" do not change when pronounced individually.

But sometimes even on their own, we need sound change rules to pronounce certain syllables – specifically, syllables with bottom consonants.

This is the word for "day." But how would you pronounce it? You couldn't say it like "나<sup>ㅈ</sup>" because that would be adding in an additional vowel, and there is no vowel at the end – its <sup>받침</sup> is simply ㅈ, which has no sound on its own without a vowel. We need rules to dictate how to pronounce words like these.

Let's take a look at our first rule for pronouncing 받침

### 1. ㄸ, ㅃ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅎ

This rule applies to syllables ending in any of the consonants ㄸ, ㅃ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅌ, ㅍ, and ㅎ.

Whenever a syllable's <sup>받침</sup> is one of the above consonants, and the syllable is at the end of a word or phrase (or said on its own), it will be pronounced as if it were a ㄷ.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

낮 → 날  
갓 → 간  
햇 → 할  
멧 → 멘  
못 → 몬  
있 → 인  
갯 → 간  
낫 → 날  
갯 → 간  
밭 → 받  
말 → 만  
히읇 → 히읇

You'll often find ㅈ at the end of words that were imported into Korean from other languages, especially English. One example is the word 인터넷<sup>ㄷ</sup> for "internet." When writing English words that end in 't' into Korean,



remember to use ㄴ at the end to represent the final sound, instead of another letter such as ㄷ.

### Advanced Notes:

ㅈ and ㅊ are absent from this rule because there are no syllables in Korean that end with these letters at the bottom.

## 2. ㄱ, ㄴ, ㅋ

Any of these three consonants (ㄱ, ㄴ, and ㅋ) are simply pronounced as ㄱ at the end of a syllable.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

박 → 박

각 → 각

씩 → 씹

뽕 → 뽕

꽤 → 꽤

깍 → 깍

복 → 복

묵 → 묵

\*Review how to pronounce syllables ending in ㄴ.

### Advanced Notes:

Syllables ending in ㅋ are quite rare (although 뽕 is a common word), while syllables ending in ㄱ are the most common.

## 3. ㅁ and ㅂ

Both of these two consonants (ㅁ and ㅂ) are pronounced as ㅁ at the end of a syllable.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

갑 → 갑

합 → 합

업 → 업

앞 → 입

갸 → 갑

슌 → 슌

### Advanced Notes:

ㅐ is absent from this list because there are no syllables in the Korean language that end with it on the bottom.

### 4. ㅁ, ㄴ, ㅇ, ㄹ

This is an easy rule. These four consonants are all pronounced like normal at the end of a syllable.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

감 → 감

움 → 움

훈 → 훈

난 → 난

명 → 명

웅 → 웅

쌀 → 쌀

말 → 말

However, remember that ㅁ sounds will still flow through the consonant ㅇ as we learned previously.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

낫 → 낫

옛 → 나시

낫 → 낫

옛 → 나제

있 → 인

있어 → 이씨

낫→ 난  
눠→ 나치  
민→ 민  
뎌→ 미더  
말→ 만  
땡→ 따

Make sure you feel comfortable with each of these rules before moving on to our first Korean lesson. To see all of the letters we've learned in one place, look at the chart in Appendix B in the back of this book. Also, make sure to check out the expanded sound change rules in Appendix C.

It's much easier, and will save you a lot of time, to learn how to read 한: properly now than to have to go back and fix your own pronunciation later. If possible, study these rules with flashcards and have them memorized, and then move onto the next section. I'll wait here patiently until you're ready to move on.

## Chapter 1: Saying Hello

Like acquiring any skill, Korean can be learned through dedication and study. I'm here to help make your work a bit easier by guiding you along this process.

Before we go into anything else, the most important thing you'll need to know in Korean is how to introduce yourself to others. Let's start with a few of the most commonly used greetings.

Read the conversation below on your own first, and then we'll break it up and learn what each part means.

### Conversation 1



A: 안녕하세요.

B: 안녕하세요.

A: 안녕히 가세요.

B: 안녕히 계세요.

It might not look like much, but this is our very first Korean conversation, and it's certainly important. Let's go over each part one

at a time.

**"Hello." – 안녕하세요.**

This means "hello," and you can say it to anyone you'd like. It also happens to be an appropriate reply to anyone saying "hello."

**"Goodbye." (to a person leaving) – 안녕히 가세요.**

Although the first two syllables look the same as "hello," this phrase means "goodbye." However, Korean has two ways of saying "goodbye." This is how to say "goodbye" to a person who is leaving. It literally means "Go in peace."

**"Goodbye." (to a person staying) – 안녕히 계세요.**

Here is the second way to say "goodbye" in Korean. This is how to say "goodbye" to a person who is staying. It literally means "Stay in peace."

Notice how the two ways of saying "goodbye" differ in only one syllable – 안녕히 가세요 and 안녕히 계세요. Remembering this difference will help you save time memorizing them both individually.

When meeting someone for the first time, it's best to start off by saying "hello." Let's look at another conversation, this time between 철수 and 영희, and then go over what each of its parts mean.

**Culture Notes:**



Koreans will bow slightly when greeting others, and the amount that they bow will depend on the status of the other person. For example, it

would be acceptable to greet someone younger than you by just lowering your head as if nodding, while greeting a company's boss would require a formal bow – if you want specifics, the maximum angle for a more formal bow will be around 45 degrees... but I didn't do any scientific studies so don't quote me on that number (I'm a Korean teacher, not a mathematician). Your greetings will vary between lowering your head and a formal bow, depending on how much respect you wish to show them. When in doubt, choose the formal bow.

You may also shake hands while bowing. This is common as well in any situation.

If you want to be extra polite and formal (usually for business transactions), use both hands when shaking hands. Or, use your right hand to shake hands, while holding your right forearm with your left hand (you read that right). However, save these kind of handshakes for only the most heartfelt and formal situations, such as the day you get to meet your favorite actor or actress in Korea.

## Conversation 2



철수: 안녕하세요.

영희: 안녕하세요.

철수: 저는 철수입니다.

영희: 저는 영희입니다.

철수: 만나서 뵙습니다.

영희: 네, 뵙습니다.

Let's break apart the conversation to understand what it means.

철수: 안녕하세요.

"Hello."

This line and the next are straightforward. 철수 is saying "hello."

#### Culture Notes:

The names 철수 and 영희 are to Koreans what "Bob" and Sally" are to English speakers, and are standard names used frequently in Korean textbooks. In fact, they were used so frequently that everyone in Korea associates these names with textbooks.

영희: 안녕하세요.

"Hello."

철수: 저는 철수입니다.

"I am Chul-soo."

Here we have 저는 followed by a name, 철수, and then 입니다 (we'll talk about 입니다 in just a moment).

#### What is 저는?

저 means "I" or "me." The 는 that comes after it is called a Topic Marker, and basically means "this is what we're going to be talking about now." 저는 can therefore translate to "we're going to be talking about me now."

I'll go over the Topic Marker in detail later on, but for now, feel free to simply remember that you can use 저는 at the start of sentences when

you're talking about yourself.

### Using 입니다

입니다 means "am" or "is" or "are" – as in "I am," or "he/she is," or "you are." Here, since we used 저는 at the beginning, it means "I am."

You can also think of 입니다 as meaning "equals."

저는 철수입니다.

"I am Chul-soo," or "I equal Chul-soo."

In English, even a verb as simple as "to be" can have several ways to say it depending on the subject – I am, you are, he/she is, they are, et cetera. Korean has no such thing. 입니다 can be used in all of these cases.

Attach 입니다 directly after a noun (here, after a name).

입니다 will only appear at the end of a sentence.

Remember that due to sound change rules, 입니다 is pronounced 임니다.

영희: 저는 영희입니다.

"I am Yung-hee."

철수: 만나서 뵙습니다.

"It's nice to meet you."

철수 says 만나서 뵙습니다, which means "It's nice to meet you."

영희: 네뵙습니다.

"Yes, nice to meet you."



"Nice to meet you."

영희 replies with a "yes" (예) followed by **큵습니다**. Notice how even though 영희 did not use 만나서 in her reply, the translation is still "It's nice to meet you." This is because "만나서" is optional in this phrase; it's fine to use it, and it's fine to leave it off.

If you look in another textbook for learning Korean, you might find "nice to meet you" taught as **참큵습니다**. This is actually the most standard and formal way of saying "nice to meet you," but is much less commonly used. However, feel free to learn it and you might hear it a few times. I would recommend (만나서) **큵습니다** in most normal situations besides formal business meetings.

### Advanced Notes:

만나서 comes from the verb 만나다, which means "to meet." However, **큵습니다** comes from the verb **큵다**, which means "to be glad," and implies that you're glad because you're meeting someone.

Adding 만나서 onto **큵습니다** simply lengthens the phrase, and can make it sound a bit more polite. Its meaning stays the same.

### Practice

Complete the conversation:

1. \_\_\_\_\_.

"Hello."

2. \_\_\_\_\_. 저는 \_\_\_\_\_입니다.

"Hello. I am Chul-soo."

3. 저는 \_\_\_\_\_입니다. 만나서 \_\_\_\_\_.

"I am Yung-hee. Nice to meet you."

4. 네 \_\_\_\_\_.

"Yes, nice to meet you."

5. 안녕히 \_\_\_\_\_.

"Goodbye." (to someone leaving)

6. 안녕히 \_\_\_\_\_.

"Goodbye." (to someone staying)

Translate to English:

7. 안녕하세요. 저는 철수입니다. 만나서 뵙습니다. 안녕히 가세요.

Translate to Korean:

8. "Hello. Nice to meet you. I am [your name]. Goodbye (you are leaving)."

### New Phrases

안녕하세요. - "Hello."

안녕히 가세요. - "Goodbye." ("Go in peace.")

안녕히 계세요. - "Goodbye." ("Stay in peace.")

저는 \_\_\_\_\_입니다. - "I am \_\_\_\_\_."

(만나서) 뵙습니다. - "Nice to meet you."

만나서 뵙습니다. - "Nice to meet you."

네 "yes"

아니요 - "no"

### New Vocabulary

저 - "I," "me"

입니다 - "am," "is," "are," "equals"

## Chapter 2: Likes and Dislikes

Once you're able to introduce yourself, you'll need to learn how to express your feelings and emotions to other people in order to communicate freely. Because after all, expression is the heart of any language. In this chapter we'll go over how to express a few emotions related to likes and dislikes.

As this is a shorter chapter, take your time to make sure that you feel comfortable with each expression and grammar form before moving on.

### Conversation



A: 저는 스포츠를 좋아합니다.

B: 저는 음악을 좋아합니다. 스포츠를 싫어합니다.

This lesson brings us a short conversation, but it should be enough for what we need to cover. Let's go over each part.

A: 저는 스포츠를 좋아합니다.  
"I like sports."

You'll notice right away that "I like" comes after "sports." This is a bit backwards from the way we do things in English. I'll explain how this works in the next chapter, but for now simply remember that what you like comes before the word "like."

What is that 을 or 를?

This is called an Object Marker. Its purpose is to point out, "hey, there's an object right before me!"

"What is an object?" Let's look at the sentence "I eat food." Here, the verb is "eat," and the object of that verb is "food." An object is what receives the action of a verb.

An Object Marker is placed directly after the object, and never before. Use 를 when it comes after a vowel, and use 을 when it comes after a consonant.

Vowel: **것을**

Consonant: **을**

B: 저는 **음악을** 좋아합니다. **스포츠를** 싫어합니다.  
"I like music. I dislike sports."

Here, the sentence works the same as above. We put "music" before "love" because that's how Korean does things.

## Pronouns

You may have noticed that although we translated the second sentence as "I like sports," there is no word for "I" in the sentence anywhere. Korean is a bit unique, in that as long as the pronoun can be easily guessed from the sentence, you don't need to include it. Pronouns in

Korean are only used when necessary.

In addition, once it's already clear who you are talking about, there is no need to repeat 저는 every sentence.

저는 수영을 **좋**합니다. 축구를 **싫**합니다.  
"I like swimming. I dislike football."

In this sentence it is not necessary to use 저는 in the second sentence, because it is already clear who you are talking about.

**춤**을 **싫**합니다.  
"I dislike dance."

Here, unless it would be vague who dislikes dance, it's not necessary to include 저는 at the beginning.

저는 수영을 **좋**합니다.  
"I like swimming."

For this sentence, perhaps someone else was talking about his or her opinions before, and now you want to add your thoughts.

Culture Notes:

**김**      **철**      **수**  
.....  
Last Name                      First Name

Most Korean names are 3 syllables; one syllable for the family name, or last name, and two syllables for the first name. For example, in the name 김철수, 김 is the last name and 철수 is the first name.

Practice

Practice making your own sentences using a noun, the Object Marker,

and one of each of our phrases in the spaces below. Choose the correct Object Marker for each sentence.

1. 저는 \_\_\_\_\_을/를 **좋**합니다.

2. 저는 \_\_\_\_\_을/를 **좋**합니다.

3. 저는 \_\_\_\_\_을/를 **싫**합니다.

Translate to English:

4. 안녕하세요. 저는 철수입니다. **을** **좋**합니다. **를** **싫**합니다.

Translate to Korean:

5. I love sports. I like basketball. I love American football. I dislike swimming.

### New Phrases

**좋**합니다. - "I like."

**좋**합니다. - "I love."

**싫**합니다. - "I dislike."

### New Vocabulary

을/를 - Object Marker

**스포츠** "sports"

**야구** - "baseball"

**축구** - "football"

**미식축구** - "American football"

**농구** - "basketball"

**배구** - "volleyball"

**테니스** "tennis"

탁구 - "table tennis," "ping-pong"

파워볼 - "dodge ball"

하키 "hockey"

수영 - "swimming"

골프 "golf"

등산 "mountain climbing," "hiking"

음악 "music"

시 - "poetry"

댄스 "dance"

역사 "history"

음식 "food"

## Chapter 3: Simple Sentences

In this lesson we'll learn how to make simple sentences using what we've learned so far. We'll also learn about basic sentence structure in Korean. Let's go over the conversation, and then break it down a bit to understand it. Try reading each part on your own first.

### Conversation



철수: 저는 고양이를 짹합니다.

영희: 저는 고양이를 췌합니다. 짹 짹합니다.

철수: 저는 김치를 짹합니다.

영희: 저는 삼겹살을 더 짹합니다.

Let's take a look at each sentence in the conversation one at a time.

철수: 저는 고양이를 짹합니다.  
"I like cats."

### Korean Sentence Structure

English is an "SVO" language. "SVO" means that the language uses



sentences structured with a subject, followed by a verb, and then an object. Let's take the sentence "I eat food." "I" is the subject, "eat" is the verb, and "food" is the object that is being eaten.

Korean is an "SOV" language. This means that the object will always come before the verb, so the sentence "I eat food" would be structured "I food eat" in Korean – the subject, followed by the object, and then the verb. Become comfortable with this structure as soon as you're able to, as it's what all of Korean grammar is based upon. It's quite important!

We learned previously that **저** is used to say "I" or "me," and that **는** (the Topic Marker) is added onto the end to mark that we're talking about "me." **고양이** means cat, and it's followed by the Object Marker, here **를**.

영희: 저는 고양이를 싫합니다. **개를** 좋아합니다.  
"I dislike cats. I like dogs."

Notice that the second sentence, "I like dogs," doesn't begin with **저는** like the first one does. This is because we already said that we're going to be talking about "me" in the first sentence, so there's no need to repeat **저는** in the second sentence, assuming we're still referring to "me."

Remember that anytime it's clear what the topic is, feel free to omit it.

철수: 저는 김치를 좋아합니다.  
"I like kimchi."

What is 김치?

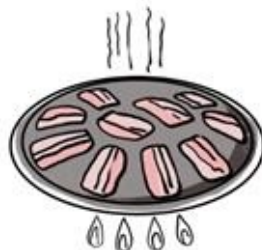


A long time ago before there were refrigerators, people had to get creative to find ways to make their food last longer. Often, adding some type of preservative (salt) to food allowed it to stay edible for a long time. Koreans began adding salt to cabbage, then storing it underground where it was cooler in large clay pots. It would ferment (get old with the help of bacteria), but remain safe to eat. This allowed people to eat cabbage all year round, which was a good source of vitamins and fiber. More recently, Koreans added red peppers to the recipe, and led us to what 김치 is today – spicy, fermented (and delicious) cabbage.

There are more varieties of 김치 than could ever fit in this book. I encourage you to experiment and try some if you're able to get your hands on any. There's a saying that language learners who love to eat 김치 speak the best Korean.

영희: 저는 삼겹살을 더 좋아합니다.  
"I like pork belly more."

What is 삼겹살?



삼겹살 is sliced pork belly, which resembles thick bacon, but has not been cured or salted. It's fried directly at tables in restaurants, cut into bite-sized pieces, and eaten with a combination of vegetables, side dishes, and 김치. I'm not going to talk about 삼겹살 anymore because

it's making me hungry.

## Adverbs in Korean

In Korean, adverbs are most often placed directly before a verb.

저는 티퍼를 랑합니다.  
"I love Tiffany."

저는 제시를 더 랑합니다.  
"I love Jessica more."

더 is an adverb which means "more." Its opposite is 덜, which means "less."

저는 수지를 덜 꺾습니다.  
"I like Suzy less."

## Advanced Notes:

Although using adverbs after a verb can sometimes be acceptable in casual conversation, it is not the norm. For better-sounding and clearer Korean, only use adverbs directly before verbs.

## Plurals

Let's take one more look at the first sentence in the example conversation.

철수: 저는 고양이를 꺾합니다.  
"I like cats."

고양이 means "cat," but notice how the English translation is "I like cats" and not "I like cat."

In Korean, using plurals is optional. It's only necessary to use a plural when you need to emphasize that something is plural.

고양이 therefore can mean either "cat" or "cats," depending on what fits better in the sentence.

But sometimes you might need to emphasize that something is plural. If you do, here's how you do it.

### Noun + 들

Take any noun you want to make plural, and attach 들.

고양이 "cat"  
→ 고양이들 "cats"

원숭이 "monkey"  
→ 원숭이들 "monkeys"

However, remember that most of the time, you won't need to use 들.

저는 원숭이를 좋아합니다.  
"I like monkeys."

But you wouldn't say, 저는 원숭이들을 좋아합니다.

It would be unnecessary, and strange, to add 들 since it is already clear that we mean "monkeys" and not "monkey."

### Articles

English uses articles such as "a," "an," and "the" to indicate several things, such as quantity ("a car" can mean "one car"), or to be specific about a certain thing ("the car" refers to a car that the speaker has already previously referred to). There's good news – Korean has no such thing to worry about.

In the future, we will cover how to indicate quantity simply using numbers (Chapter 13), and how to be specific about a certain thing by pointing out "this" or "that" (Chapter 11).

## Practice

Translate to English:

1. 저는 고양이를 더 짱합니다.
2. 저는 糞 더 짱합니다.

Translate to Korean:

3. I love movies.
4. I love books more.
5. I dislike bugs.
6. I dislike spiders more.

## New Vocabulary

고양이 - "cat"  
개 "dog"  
원숭이 - "monkey"  
벌레 "bug," "insect"  
거미 - "spider"  
책 "book"  
작가 - "author"  
사전 "dictionary"  
전자사전 "electronic dictionary"

영화 - "movie"

김치 - "kimchi"

삼겹살 - "pork belly"

더 - "more" (adverb)

덜 - "less" (adverb)

## Chapter 4: Wanting and Not Wanting

In this chapter we'll cover how to express our wants, as well as what we don't want. We'll also learn how to ask for things politely with "please," and a few essential Korean particles.

### Conversation



김철수: 저는 아르바이트를 원합니다.

김영희: 저도 아르바이트를 원합니다.

김철수: 하지만 일을 원하지 않습니다. 뭘 원합니다.

김영희: 저도 일하고 싶지 않습니다. 게임 하고 싶습니다.

김철수: 저도 게임 하고 싶습니다. 하지만 돈 벌 싶습니다.

### "Want" and "Want to"

Korean has two ways to say "want" – which one you use will depend on whether you're using a verb or a noun.

저는 **핸드폰**을 원합니다.

"I want a cell phone."

저는 **핸드폰**을 **받** 싶습니다.  
"I want to get a cell phone."

The difference between the two above sentences is the first one uses only a noun – "cell phone." The second sentence uses a verb – "to get." Let's go over both of these:

"Want" – Noun + (을/를) 원합니다.  
"Don't want" – Noun + (을/를) 원하지 않습니다.

When you want to express that you want something, take the noun and attach the Object Marker. Then add 원합니다.

저는 **음식**을 원합니다.  
"I want food."

저는 **연필**을 원합니다.  
"I want a pencil."

The opposite can be expressed by using 원하지 않습니다 instead.

저는 **야채**를 원하지 않습니다.  
"I don't want vegetables."

저는 **돈**을 원하지 않습니다. **사랑**을 원합니다.  
"I don't want money. I want love."

"Want to" – Verb Stem + 고 싶습니다.  
"Don't want to" – Verb Stem + 고 싶지 않습니다.

When you want to express that you want to do an action, take the verb stem and attach 고. Then add 싶습니다.

What is the Verb Stem?



Getting the verb stem of a verb is simple. Just take a verb and remove the 다 at the end, and that's it! You're going to see verb stems used everywhere in Korean grammar.

하다  
→ 하

벌다  
→ 벌

먹다  
→ 먹

저는 과일을 먹 싶습니다.  
"I want to eat fruits."

저는 돈을 벌 싶습니다.  
"I want to earn money."

The opposite would be made by using 고 싶지 않습니다.

저는 채소를 먹지 않습니다.  
"I don't want to eat vegetables."

저는 죽지 않습니다.  
"I don't want to die."

저는 웃지 않습니다.  
"I don't want to laugh."

Note that the verb 웃 can mean both "to smile" or "to laugh." Which one it translates to depends on the context of the sentence. If either seem to fit, feel free to translate it as either.

**저는 웃 싶지 않습니다.**  
**"I don't want to smile."**

### **Advanced Notes:**

However! This form (verb stem + 고 싶습니다) can only be used for "I" or "you," and it cannot be used to mean "he" or "she" – it cannot be used to mean "he/she wants to." This is because in Korean, you cannot talk about the desires of another person directly.

Although you can say "I want to go" or "you want to go," in Korean it is not acceptable to say "he wants to go" or "she wants to go" with this same form. You can use this form only when talking about yourself or someone else who you are directly speaking to.

Remember that if you're expressing that you want to do something, use 고 싶습니다, and if you're expressing that you want something, use 원합니다.

**"Please give me..."**  
**Noun + (을/를) 주세요**



In order to ask for something politely, say what you want followed by the Object Marker, and then add 주세요.

**을 주세요.**  
**"Please give me money."**

**를 주세요.**  
**"Please give me a hint."**

**를 주세요.**  
**"Please give me a book."**

### Culture Notes:

Approximately 5% of all Korean vocabulary comes from foreign words, most of those from the English language. This includes words such as **커피** and **오렌지**.

Words such as these are sometimes referred to as Konglish – a combination of Korean and English. So if you hear a word in Korean that sounds a lot like an English word, chances are it originally was.

Now that we've learned some important grammar, let's read over the conversation.

김철수: 저는 아르바이트를 원합니다.  
"I want a part time job."

The word "아르바이트" comes from the German word "arbeit" (which means "job"). In slang, this word is commonly shortened to **알바**.

김영희: 저도 아르바이트를 원합니다.  
"I want a part time job too."

Here in the conversation we have the word **저**, meaning "I" or "me," followed by **도**. Together, **저도** means "I also" or "me too."

### The Particle 도

Notice how **도** is taking the place of **는** in the above sentence. Saying **저는도** would be incorrect. When using the particle **도**, it replaces whatever particle was there previously (if there was one).

**도** is placed directly after a word. The meaning of **도** is "also," "even," or "too."

저도 김치를 **좋아**합니다.

**"I also like kimchi." (Other people also might like kimchi)**

**저는 김치도 ~~좋~~합니다.**

**"I like kimchi too." (I might also like other things)**

Notice how the meaning changes by placing the **도** in a different location. **도** emphasizes "also," "even," or "too" only for the noun or pronoun that it directly follows.

**저도 ~~차~~를 원합니다.**

**"I also want a car." (Other people also might want a car)**

**저는 ~~차~~도 원합니다.**

**"I want a car too." (I might also want other things)**

Because the **도** in this sentence is placed after "car," it means "I want a car, in addition to whatever else I may want," and not "I also want a car, just like you do."

The word car can be shortened simply to **차**, but know that **차** can also mean "tea." Only shorten **자동차** to **차** when the meaning is clear from the context.

Let's continue with the conversation.

**김철수: 하지만 일을 원하지 않습니다. ~~돈~~ 원합니다.**

**"But I don't want work. I only want money."**

**하지만** means "but" or "however," and can only be used at the beginning of a sentence.

### **The Particle **만****

**만** works grammatically similar to **도**, in that it comes after a noun. It

replaces whatever particle was previously there (if there was one), except for the Object Marker, which you may replace if you want.

저만 짹합니다.  
"Only I like it."

저는 참만 원합니다.  
"I only want tuna."

Here, without 만, the sentence would be 저는 참을 원합니다. Because it would normally use an Object Marker, you could have also written the above sentence like this:

저는 참만을 원합니다.  
"I only want tuna."

To keep things simple, feel free to remove whatever particle was previously there every time, and you'll be just fine.

김영희: 저도 일하고 싶지 않습니다. 게임 하고 싶습니다.  
"I also don't want work. I want to play games."

김철수: 저도 게임 하고 싶습니다. 하지만 돈 벌 싶습니다.  
"I also want to play games. But I want to earn money too."

## Practice

Translate to English:

1. 저는 토닥도 딱 싶습니다.
2. 저는 토닥만 딱 싶습니다.
3. 저도 올 벌 싶습니다.

4. 저만 **올** **별** 싶습니다.

Translate to Korean:

5. "Only I like kimchi."

6. "I like only kimchi."

7. "I also want to eat vegetables."

8. "I want to eat vegetables also."

### New Phrases

원합니다. - "I want..."

원하지 않습니다. - "I don't want..."

Verb Stem + 고 싶습니다. - "I want to..."

Verb Stem + 고 싶지 않습니다. - "I don't want to..."

주세요. - "Please give me..."

### New Vocabulary

하다 - "to do"

먹다 - "to eat"

죽다 - "to die"

태어나다 - "to be born"

받다 - "to get," "to receive"

벌다 - "to earn (money)"

울다 - "to cry"

웃다 - "to smile," "to laugh"

게임(을) 하다 - "to play games"

게임 - "game"

하지만 - "but," "however"

아르메~~트~~or ~~엘~~ - "part time job"

돈 "money"

일 - "work," "job"

연~~필~~ "pencil"

(~~정~~차 - "car"

배 "boat"

~~핸~~폰 "cell phone" (literally, "hand phone")

랑 - "love"

~~채~~ "vegetables"

과일 - "fruit"

빠나 - "banana"

포 - "grape"

토~~토~~ - "tomato"

~~레~~몬 "lemon"

오~~렌~~ - "orange"

아이~~크림~~ "ice cream"

차 - "tea"

참~~치~~ - "tuna"

흔~~트~~ "a hint"

도 - "also," "even," "too" (particle)

만 - "only" (particle)

## Chapter 5: Verbs

This chapter is all about using verbs. We'll learn how to use verbs to make our own sentences and conversations, as well as how to refer to other people.

### Conversation



김철수: 영희 씨, 안녕하세요.  
김영희: 안녕하세요. 저는 **학생**입니다.  
김철수: 저는 **학생**입니다.  
김영희: 저는 **학생**입니다.  
김철수: 저는 **학생**입니다.

Let's read over the conversation together.

김철수: 영희 씨, 안녕하세요.  
"Hello Yung-hee."

### Using 씨

In Korean, 씨 takes the place of "Mr.," "Mrs.," or "Miss." 씨 is placed



after a person's name. If you don't know a person's first name, it is fine to simply place 씨 after their last name.

김 씨  
"Mr./Mrs./Miss Kim"

박씨  
"Mr./Mrs./Miss Park"

But a more common, recommended usage of 씨 is with first names.

영희 씨  
"Yung-hee"

철수 씨  
"Chul-soo"

Although it is a bit formal and impersonal, it is also acceptable to refer to someone by their full name with 씨 attached.

김영희 씨  
"Mr./Mrs./Miss Kim Yung-hee"

In Korean, calling someone by only their first name (without 씨) is only acceptable in casual situations with close friends; it would be impolite at other times. This is different from other English speaking countries, where calling someone by their first name is considered friendly.

Also notice in the conversation how the person's name comes before the greeting. In English we would say "Hello Yung-hee," but in Korean it's proper to place the name of the person you are talking to at the beginning of the sentence.

철수 씨, 안녕하세요.

"Hello Chul-soo."

Also remember that **씨** is used when referring to other people – you should not add **씨** when saying your own name.

김영희: 안녕하세요. 저는 **학교** 갑니다.  
"Hello. I go to school."

### The **니다** Verb Form Verb Stem + **ㅂ니다/습니다**

It's time we started looking at how verbs work. Let's take a moment and go over how to conjugate – change the form of – a verb in present tense.

An example of a present tense sentence in English would be "I watch a movie." Present tense means the sentence is happening in the present. This is different from past tense ("I watched a movie yesterday.") which we will cover later, or future tense ("I will watch a movie tomorrow.")

In the last chapter we learned a few of our first verbs such as **하다** ("to do"), **먹다** ("to eat"), and **받다** ("to get," "to receive"). To make it easier to learn verbs, we'll teach them first in this book in their standard un-conjugated form. But we can't simply use them in a sentence without conjugating them first. Verbs will conjugate differently depending on how they're being used.

To conjugate a verb to the present tense, take the verb stem (review how from the last chapter) and attach **ㅂ니다** if it ends in a vowel, or attach **습니다** if it ends in a consonant. Here are a few examples:

가다 → 가 + **ㅂ니다**  
→ 갑니다

하다 → 하 + ㅂ니다  
→ 합니다

딱 → 먹 습니다  
→ 땀니다

빔 → 받 습니다  
→ 뺌니다

오다 → 오 + ㅂ니다  
→ 옵니다

좌 → 죽 습니다  
→ 줍니다

놀다 → 놀 + ?

Verb stems that end in ㄹ are an exception. For verbs in the present tense with this form, remove the ㄹ after you get the verb stem.

놀다 → 놀 - ㄹ → 노 ㅂ니다  
→ 놀다

빔 → 벌 ㄹ → 바 ㅂ니다  
→ 뺌다

Here are some more examples.

저는 갑니다.  
"I go."

저는 옵니다.  
"I come."

저는 치즈를 씹니다.

"I eat cheese."

저는 게임합니다.

"I play games."

### The Particle 에

에 is a particle that can have a few different meanings depending on how it's used. It can mean "to," such as in the above dialogue, "I go to school" (going to somewhere). It can also mean "at" (located at somewhere), or "in" (located in somewhere). However, for this chapter we will focus on its meaning of "to" a location.

저는 병원에 갑니다.

"I go to the hospital."

저는 영화관에 갑니다.

"I go to the movie theater."

Let's go back to the conversation.

김철수: 저는 집에 갑니다.

"I go home."

### More on 에

The above sentence, "I go home," might sound a bit strange – almost robotic, or like a caveman – when read in English. However in Korean, speaking in the present tense is perfectly normal, and does not sound strange.

But to make a more natural translation, feel free to translate the present tense to the ing form in English.

저는 **집** 갑니다.  
"I'm going (to) home."

저는 **학교** 갑니다.  
"I'm going to school."

김영희: 저는 **공부** 합니다.  
"I study."

Here we have a new verb, **공부하다** 하다. This verb is a combination of **공부** which means "study" and is a noun, with the verb **하다** ("to do"). Together it literally means "to do study." In this book and through your own studying you will learn many verbs in Korean which are a combination of a noun and the verb **하다**.

김철수: 저는 **놀이** 합니다.  
"I play."

### The Verb 놀다



**놀다** can translate as either "to play" or "to hang out." This is because although it means "to play," it is the standard word you would use when meeting up with a friend to do something. In English, "to play" is a word reserved for certain things such as games or for children meeting together. However in Korean, it's normal to keep using the verb **놀다** into adulthood.

In the above example as well, to make a more natural sounding translation, feel free to translate this sentence as "I'm playing."

## Practice

Translate to Korean:

1. "I go to the hospital."
2. "I come to the hospital."
3. "I want to go to school."
4. "I want to hang out."

Translate to English:

5. 저는 게임을 합니다.
6. 저는 ~~놀다~~ 갑니다.
7. 저는 ~~놀다~~에 갑니다.
8. 저는 치조 ~~먹~~ 싶습니다.

## New Vocabulary

- 가다 - "to go"
- 오다 - "to come"
- 놀다 - "to play," "to hang out"
- 살다 - "to live"
- 공부를 하다 - "to study"
- 좋아하다 - "to like"
- 싫어하다 - "to dislike" (person/thing)

미워하다 - "to hate" (person)  
사랑(을) 하다 - "to love"  
교환(을) 하다 - "to exchange money"  
원하다 - "to want"  
공부 "study"  
학교 "school"  
집 "home," "house"  
병원 - "hospital"  
치과 - "dentist"  
수영장 "swimming pool"  
도서관 "library"  
사무실 "office"  
카페 "café"  
은행 "bank"  
슈퍼마켓 "supermarket"  
영화관 "movie theater"  
박물관 "museum"  
바다 - "ocean"  
사장 - "beach"  
해변 "seaside," "seashore"  
주소 - "an address"  
집주소 - "home address"  
고향 "hometown"  
도시 - "city"  
지역 "an area," "a region"  
길 "a street," "a road," "a way"  
부분 - "part," "portion"  
연출 "(acting) role"  
연출 "performance," "play"  
방송 "a broadcast"  
프로그램 "a program"  
치즈 "cheese"  
에 - "to," "at," "in" (particle)  
씨 - "Mr," "Ms./Mrs."





## Chapter 6: More Verbs

This chapter contains a more in-depth explanation of Korean verbs, as well as introduces a few more important verbs that you'll need to know. Also, you'll be introduced to the Subject Marker, and another way of working with verbs – to connect two sentences using "but" ("I am an American, but I love Korea.").

### Conversation



A: 저는 한국 사람입니다. 한국에 아파트 있습니다.

B: 저는 미국 사람입니다. 미국에 집 있습니다.

A: 저는 미국에 가고 싶습니다.

B: 저는 한국에 가고 싶지만 지금 미국에 있습니다.

Let's go over each line in the conversation one at a time.

A: 저는 한국 사람입니다. 한국에 아파트 있습니다.

"I am a Korean. I have an apartment in Korea."

More About 입니다

입니다 is actually the verb 이다 conjugated to the present tense.

The verb 이다 (here, 입니다) attaches directly to the word before it, with no spaces.

저는 일본인입니다.

"I am Japanese."

저는 영국인입니다.

"I am English."

저는 독일인입니다.

"I am German."

### The Verb 있다

The verb 있다 literally means "to exist." However, it can be used in two ways.

First, you can use the verb 있다 to say that something or someone exists – there is something or someone. Use a noun, followed by the Subject Marker (we'll go over this next), and then conjugate the verb 있다.

집에 있습니다.

"There is a house."

Literally this sentence means, "a house exists."

And second, you can use 있다 to say that you have something.

저는 돈 있습니다.

"I have money."

Literally this sentence means "I, money exists," but you can use **있다** in this way to say that you have something. Use the Subject Marker after what it is that you have.

저는 **책**가 있습니다.  
"I have a car."

저는 **펜** 있습니다.  
"I have a pen."

### Advanced Notes:

As you discover more about Korean markers in this book in later chapters, you will learn that other markers can also be used instead of only the Subject Marker.

저는 **책**도 있습니다.  
"I also have a car."

**책**는 있습니다.  
"As for a car, I have one."

The Object Marker, however, cannot be used in this way.

The sentence 저는 **책**를 있습니다 would therefore be incorrect. This is because the verb **있다** does not have an object – it merely means that something or someone exists.

## Introducing the Subject Markers – **이** and **가**

In the sentences above you'll notice either **이** or **가** after a noun. These are Subject Markers.

A Subject Marker in Korean marks a subject of a verb. This is different from the Topic Marker, which I'll go over in a later chapter. For now, you don't need to know exactly how to use a Subject Marker yet; we'll cover it more in detail later on as we use it. Simply know that a Subject Marker is used together with **있다** to say that you have something, or to say that something or someone exists.

The Subject Marker is **이** when it comes after a consonant, or **가** when it comes after a vowel.

집  
차가  
한국이  
아파트

Let's look at some examples with the Subject Marker and the verb **있다**.

저는 일이 있습니다.  
"I have work."

저는 차가 있습니다.  
"I have a car."

차가 있습니다.  
"There is a car," or "I have a car."

집 있습니다.  
"There is a house," or "I have a house."

The context of a sentence will always make it clear whether someone is talking about something they have or something that simply exists.

### More About **에**

In the last chapter we focused on how **에** can mean "to" (to somewhere). In this chapter we'll learn how it can also mean "at" (located at somewhere) and "in" (located in somewhere).

(저는) 한국에 집 있습니다.  
"I have a house in Korea."

This sentence literally can mean "I, a house exists in Korea," but here in context 있다 is being used to mean "have."

What you have, or what exists, will most often come right before the verb 있다 in a sentence.

저는 **텔레비전**이 있습니다.  
"I have a TV at my house."

#### Advanced Notes:

It is also accurate to say (저는) **집** 한국에 있습니다. Switching **집** around with 한국에 is still grammatically accurate, and adds emphasis to the location. Although the English translation would be similar, you can think of it meaning "I have a house in Korea" (emphasis added).

**병원**에 **환자**가 있습니다.  
"There are patients at the hospital."

한국에 **한국 사람**이 있습니다.  
"There are Koreans in Korea."

저는 미국에 **여자친구**가 있습니다.  
"I have a girlfriend in America."

저는 한국에 **남친**이 있습니다.  
"I have a boyfriend in Korea."

#### Additional Notes on "Have"



While the verb 있다 is used to say that someone "exists" for people and things, it cannot be used to say that you "have" an animal. For

animals, the verb **키우다** ("to raise") must be used.

저는 고양이를 **키웁니다**.  
"I have a cat (as a pet)."

저는 **개**를 **키우** 싶습니다.  
"I want to have a dog (as a pet)."

However, you will still use the verb **있다** when stating that an animal simply exists.

**학교**에 고양이가 있습니다.  
"There is a cat in the school."

B: 저는 미국 **사람**입니다. 미국에 **집** 있습니다.  
"I am an American. I have a house in America."

It's not required to state **저는** at the beginning of every single sentence, once it's already clear that you're talking about yourself.

An alternate word for 미국 **사람** is **미국인**. Both have the same meaning, but **미국인** is a bit more formal sounding. **인** means "person," but can't be used by itself. Feel free to use either word. The same thing applies to **일본** and **한국인**, among others.

A: 저는 미국에 가고 싶습니다.  
"I want to go to America."

**있다** can also be used for saying that a person is "in" or "at" a location.

저는 **집**에 있습니다.  
"I am at home."

Literally this means, "I exist at home."

저는 한국에 있습니다.  
"I am in Korea."

Remember that **에** can mean both "in" or "at" (as we used it with **있다**), or "to" (as we used it last chapter). Also remember that the location you are going "to" will come before the verb.

저는 **유럽** 가고 싶습니다.  
"I want to go to Europe."

B: 저는 한국에 가고 싶지만 지금 미국에 있습니다.  
"I want to go to Korea, but now I'm in America."

Verb Stem + **지만**

In Chapter 4 we learned about how to use **하지만** at the beginning of a sentence to mean "but" or "however." This time, let's learn how to say "but" or "however" when it's in the middle of a sentence.

Take the verb stem and attach **지만**, then finish the sentence with whatever you want to say. That's all there is to it.

저는 미국 **사람**지만 한국을 **좋아**합니다.  
"I am an American, but I love Korea."

**이지만** comes from the verb **이다**. However, the verb stem of **이다** changes when used after words ending in a vowel.

First, here is what **이다** looks like with **지만** when used after a consonant:

미국 **사람**지만

And here is what it looks like after a vowel:

밖에만

Notice how after a vowel, the verb stem of 이다 changes to become nothing.

### Advanced Notes:

Although I said that the verb stem of 이다 changes after a vowel, it's actually not completely wrong to say 밖에지만. But this sounds lengthy and looks more like something you might find in an old textbook than in modern spoken Korean.

저는 우유를 싫어하지만 우유를 마셔요.

"I dislike milk, but I drink it."

저는 한국 사람이지만 한국어를 공부해요.

"I am a Korean, but I study Korean."

### The Adverbs 지금 and 이제

지금 is an adverb, meaning it describes a verb (similar to how an adjective describes a noun); it means "now" or "right now," and comes before the verb in a sentence.

저는 지금 가고 싶습니다.

"I want to go now."

저는 지금 한국에 있습니다.

"I am in Korea now."

Notice how it comes before the verb – in the first sentence before 가다, and in the second sentence before 있다. It will never appear at the end of the sentence.



Another similar word is 이제, which also means "now." While 지금 emphasizes "right now," 이제 emphasizes "from now." However, both will translate simply as "now."

저는 지금 가고 싶습니다.

"I want to go (right) now."

저는 이제 가고 싶습니다.

"I want to go (from) now."

Both have similar meanings, so feel free to use either one.

### Practice

Translate to English:

1. 저는 지금 **출발** 합니다.
2. 저는 **한국** 있습니다.
3. 저는 미국에 **여행**가 있습니다.
4. 저는 한국에 가고 싶지만 미국에도 가고 싶습니다.

Translate to Korean:

5. "I'm going to Korea."
6. "I'm going to America now."
7. "I have a car."
8. "There is kimchi in Korea."

9. "There are Americans in America."

10. "I want to go to England, but I want to go to Korea also."

### New Vocabulary

말(을) 하다 - "to speak," "to say"

거짓말(을) 하다 - "to lie"

이다 - "to be"

있다 - "to exist"

키우다 - "to raise"

진실(을) 말(을) 하다 - "to tell the truth"

고백(을) 하다 - "to confess"

한국말 "Korean (language)"

영어 - "English (language)"

중국어 - "Chinese (language)"

일본말 "Japanese (language)"

독일어 - "German (language)"

프랑스어 - "French (language)"

스페인어 - "Spanish (language)"

말 "word"

거짓말 "lie"

진실 "truth"

의미 - "meaning"

의견 "opinion"

성격 "personality"

차이 - "difference"

사이다 - "cider," "soda"

아파트 "apartment"

환자 "a patient"

여자 "girl," "woman"

소년 "boy," "man"

친구 - "friend"

여자친구 - "girlfriend"

남친 - "boyfriend"  
외국 - "foreign country"  
외국어 - "foreign language"  
섬 "island"  
정원 - "garden"  
호수 - "lake"  
강 "river"  
한국 - "(South) Korea"  
한국 사람 "a Korean (person)"  
한국인 - "a Korean (person)"  
미국 - "America"  
미국 사람 "an American (person)"  
미국인 - "an American (person)"  
일본 "Japan"  
일본 사람 "a Japanese (person)"  
일본인 - "a Japanese (person)"  
영국 - "England"  
영국 사람 "English (person)"  
독일 - "Germany"  
독일 사람 "a German (person)"  
중국 - "China"  
중국 사람 "a Chinese (person)"  
유럽 "Europe"  
북한 - "North Korea"  
지금 - "(right) now"  
이제 - "(from) now"  
사람 "person"  
인간 "human"  
괴물 "monster"  
귀신 - "ghost"  
신 - "god"  
텔레비전 "television"  
텔레비전 "television" (abbreviation)  
펜 "pen"

유 "milk"

물 "water"

마시다 - "to drink"

보다 - "to see"

읽다 - "to read"

듣다 - "to listen"

믿다 - "to believe"

신문 - "newspaper"

뉴스 "news"

지도 - "map"

사진 "photo"

카메라 - "camera"

사진을) 찍다 - "to take a photo"

그림 "drawing"

그리다 - "to draw"

그림을) 그리다 - "to draw (a drawing)"

떠나다) 하다 - "to depart"

도착하다) 하다 - "to arrive"

떨어지다 - "to fall"

떨어뜨리다 - "to drop (something)"

열다 - "to open (something)"

닫다 - "to close (something)"

만들다 - "to make"

## Chapter 7: Asking Questions

So far we've only been able to make statements in Korean. This chapter will explain how to ask questions, as well as how to respond. We'll also learn an additional way of referring to other people. Then, we'll learn how to connect two nouns together using "and" – "pizza and cola."

### Conversation



김철수: 선생님, 안녕하세요. 잘 지내세요?

김영희: 아, 네김철수 씨도 잘 지내세요?

김철수: 네요 ~~즐거움~~ 합니까?

김영희: 저는 ~~행들~~을 가르칩니다.

김철수: ~~뭘~~ 가르칩니까?

김영희: 저는 수~~화~~ 과~~학~~ 가르칩니다.

김철수: 저도 수~~화~~ 과~~학~~ ~~배우~~ 싶습니다.

김영희: ~~정말~~ ~~배우~~ 싶습니까?

김철수: 네하지만 ~~책~~과 ~~시~~를 ~~읽~~합니다. 선생님은요?

김영희: 하하. 저도 ~~책~~과 ~~시~~를 ~~읽~~합니다.

Try reading the conversation on your own before we start dissecting it.  
Got it? Okay, let's start.

Actually, before we go over the conversation, let's learn how to ask questions in Korean.

### Verb Stem + ㅂ니까/습니까

Just like when we conjugated the present tense (ㅂ니다/습니다), making questions is done in the same way. Take the verb stem (review Chapter 5 if you're not sure) and add ㅂ니까 if it ends in a vowel, or add 습니까 if it ends in a consonant. Add a question mark to the end just like in English.

가다 → 가 + ㅂ니까  
→ 갑니까?

빔 → 빔 습니까  
→ 빔습니까?

하다 → 하 + ㅂ니까  
→ 합니까?

딱 → 딱 습니까  
→ 락습니까?

김치를 ㅅ습니까?  
"Do you like kimchi?"

네김치를 ㅅ합니다.  
"Yes, I like kimchi."

김치를 락습니까?  
"Do you eat kimchi?"

네김치를 락합니다.

"Yes, I eat kimchi."

Now let's look over the conversation.

김철수: 선생님, 안녕하세요. 잘 지내세요?  
"Hello teacher. Are you doing well?"

What is a 선생님?

In Chapter 5 we learned about 씨, and how it can be used to mean "Mr.," "Mrs.," or "Miss" when attached to the end of a person's full name or last name.

선생님 can mean "Mr." when attached to a male's full name or last name, or it can also mean "Sir" when used on its own. Using 선생님 can be even more polite than using 씨, so use it when you're able to with older males.

김 선생님  
"Mr. Kim"

김철수 선생님  
"Mr. Kim Chul-soo"

선생님  
"Sir"

However, 선생님 can also be used as a polite way to refer to someone who is a teacher. When used to mean "teacher," it can be used for both males and females.

선생님  
"Teacher"

김 선생님  
"Mr./Mrs./Miss Kim" (who is a teacher)

Note that although 선생님 can mean "teacher," it is not necessary that they be your teacher.

잘 지내세요 is a common and polite way to ask someone if they are doing well. 잘 is an adverb which means "well."

김영희: 아, 네김철수 씨도 잘 지내세요?  
"Ah, yes. Are you doing well too, Mr. Kim Chul-soo?"

Remember that 도 ("also," "even," "too") is attached directly to whatever it's used with – in this case 씨, since 씨 is a title and counts as part of the person's full name. It would be incorrect to say 김철수도 씨.

김철수: 네요 요즘 할니까?  
"Yes. What do you do these days?"

요즘 means "lately," "nowadays," or "these days."

무엇 means "what" (it even kind of sounds like "what"). Here, since we're using the verb 하다 after it, 무엇이 acting as an object, and therefore is followed by the Object Marker.

무엇 can be used in many situations.

무엇을 먹고 싶습니까?  
"What do you want to eat?"

무엇을 좋아합니까?  
"What do you like?"

무엇이 있습니까?  
"What do you have?"



Notice how there's no pronoun (here, "you") at the start of the sentence above. This is because pronouns in Korean are not necessary unless it is not clear who you are referring to. Here, it's clear that the speaker is talking about the other person, so it's not necessary to add the pronoun "you."

김영희: 저는 **행**들을 가르칩니다.  
"I teach students."

Here, **들** is used after **행** to emphasize that she teaches multiple students. Without **들**, it could be vague whether the teacher is teaching only one student, or more. However, in situations where it's not vague, remember that **들** is not necessary. When in doubt, don't add **들**.

김철수: **뭘** 가르칩니까?  
"What do you teach?"

This is another example of **뭘** being used as an object.

김영희: 저는 **수학**과**과학**을 가르칩니다.  
"I teach math and science."

**과** and **와**

You can use **과** and **와** to connect two nouns together in a sentence, just like "and."

Attach it directly to the first noun it's placed after. Use **와** when following a vowel, and use **과** when following a consonant.

**피자와 콜라**  
"pizza and cola"

**그릇과 찻잔**

"bowl and chopsticks"

왜 고양이  
"dog and cat"

사람 동물  
"person and animal"

You will still use an Object Marker after listing two or more nouns connected in this manner, but remember to only use one Object Marker after the last noun.

저는 왜 와 를 먹고 싶습니다.  
"I want to eat steak and potatoes."

저는 미국 사람 한국 사람 좋아합니다.  
"I like Americans and Koreans."

김철수: 저도 수학과 과학 배우 싶습니다.  
"I also want to learn math and science."

There are no new concepts in this sentence, but it combines together several things that we've learned. Make sure you're able to understand this sentence, as well as the whole conversation, before moving on.

김영희: 정말 배우 싶습니까?  
"You really want to learn?"

정말 is an adverb that means "really." The 로 is optional.

햄버거를 정말로 싶습니다.  
"I really want to eat a hamburger."

저는 정말로 예 갑니다.

"I'm really going to France."

정말 있습니까?

"Do you really have money?"

정말 can be used almost anywhere in a sentence, just like "really" can be placed anywhere in an English sentence. However, typically 정말 will come before the verb in a sentence.

김철수: 네하지만 책과 시험을 싫어합니다. 선생님은요?

"Yes. But I dislike homework and tests. What about you, teacher?"

은요 and 는요

은요 or 는요 is a combination of the Topic Marker (which we haven't yet gone over in detail) and 요. It can be used after a noun to end a question, when there is no other verb to end it.

It would not be polite in Korean to end a sentence with a noun and nothing else. Adding 은요 or 는요 after a noun at the end of your sentence is polite, and gives the meaning of "how about...?" or "what about...?" when you're asking for more information about something.

Use 은요 when following a consonant, and 는요 when following a vowel.

김철수 씨는요?

"How about Mr. Kim Chul-soo?"

미국 사람은요?

"How about Americans?"

고양이는요?

"What about the cat?"

삼겹살은요?  
"How about pork belly?"

학교는요?  
"What about school?"

책은요?  
"How about homework?"

### Advanced Notes:

Just adding a question mark to the end of a noun (or person), instead of attaching 은요 or 는요, would be the equivalent of repeating what a person said, as if you didn't hear correctly. However, speaking this way is impolite, and should be avoided.

김영희: 하하. 저도 책과 시험을 싫어합니다.  
"Haha. I also dislike homework and tests."

In this chapter we learned both 아 ("Ah") and 하하 ("Haha"). In addition to these two, there's also 헉 ("My gosh"), 휴 ("Phew"), 음 ("Hm"), and many more.

### Culture Notes:



돼지 꿈이에요!  
"Dream of pigs!"

돼지 means "pig," and "꿈 means "a dream," so together 돼지 꿈 means "a dream about pigs."

You might find gold colored ceramic pigs in street-side stores while shopping in any city in Korea. This is because in Korea, pigs are

considered to be a sign of good luck (they certainly taste delicious).

Although it would be rude to call a person 돼, just as it would be in English, it is acceptable, and humorous, to tell someone to "dream of pigs" before going to bed. This can be done with the phrase 돼 꿈꿔요, which literally means "dream a dream about pigs."

### Practice

Translate to English:

1. 김철수 선생님과 김영희 선생님이 한국 사람입니다.
2. 저는 김치와 삼겹살을 좋아합니다.
3. 저는 수학을 정말 좋아합니다.
4. 김철수 선생님은요?
5. 뭘 먹고 싶습니까?
6. 요즘을 합니까?

Translate to Korean:

7. "Hello. Are you doing well?"
8. "I am also an American."
9. "Mr. Kim Chul-soo is really a Korean."
10. "I dislike homework but I like math and science."
11. "What do you want to do?"

12. "How about pizza?"

13. "Do you love monkeys?"

### New Phrases

잘 지내세요? - "Are you doing well?"

안녕히 주무세요. - "Goodnight." ("Sleep well.")

돼지꿈 꿔요. - "Dream of pigs."

### New Vocabulary

소개(를) 하다 - "to introduce"

아 - "Ah"

하하 - "Haha"

헉 "My gosh"

휴 "Phew"

음 "Hm"

저 - "Uh..."

그 - "Uh..."

선생님 - "Sir," "Mr.," "teacher"

학생 - "student"

잘 - "well" (adverb)

요즘 "lately," "nowadays," "these days"

정말로 - "really" (adverb)

파스타 - "pasta"

피자 - "pizza"

콜라 - "cola"

밥 - "sushi" (vinegared rice with fish, etc.)

회 "sashimi" (raw fish)

수학 "math"

과학 "science"

미술 "art"

지리 - "geography"  
책 - "homework"  
책(를) 하다 - "to do homework"  
시험 "test"  
결과 - "result"  
뭇 "what" (noun)  
가르치다 - "to teach"  
배우 - "to learn"  
기다리다 - "to wait"  
앉 - "to sit"  
서다 - "to stand"  
눕 - "to lie down"  
차다 - "to kick"  
치다 - "to hit"  
싸우 - "to fight"  
이기다 - "to win"  
지다 - "to lose"  
그릇 "bowl"  
젓가락 "chopsticks"  
포크 "fork"  
가위 - "scissors"  
풀 "glue"  
스테이크 "steak"  
감 "potato"  
양파 "onion"  
파 "green onion"  
햄버거 - "hamburger"  
소시지 - "sausage"  
랑스 "France"  
힘 "strength," "power"  
좌 - "a seat," "space (for something)"  
동물 "animal"  
돼지 - "pig"  
꿈 "a dream"

꿈을) 꾸 - "to dream"

춤을) 추 - "to dance"

과/와 - "and"



## Chapter 8: More Questions

This chapter builds upon the last, and we'll learn how to make more natural sentences using a few new grammatical forms. Specifically, we'll learn how to ask questions about certain individual people or things, instead of only general questions about another person.

### Conversation



A: 언제 밥을 뭍러 나갑니까?

B: 오늘에 나갑니다. 어메 가고 싶습니까?

A: 서웁 가고 싶습니다. 누가 갑니까?

B: 저와 김영희 씨와 김철수 선생님이 갑니다.

A: 김철수 선생님이 누구입니까?

B: 서울에 갑니다.

A: 아, 알습니다. 그러면 어떻게 갑니까?

B: 뭍는 걸 갑니다.

Let's go right to the conversation.

A: 언제 밥을 뭍러 나갑니까?  
"When will you leave to eat?"

## Verb Stem + (으)러

When you want to say "to go to do something" or "to come to do something," such as "to go to eat" or "to come to watch a movie," use this form. Take the verb stem of the verb you are going to do, then add 으러 if it ends in a consonant, or add 러 if it ends in a vowel.

The verb following this form will always be a verb that shows movement, such as going or coming, among others.

먹러 가다  
"to go to eat"

먹러 오다  
"to come to eat"

일을 하러 가다  
"to go to work"

일을 하러 오다  
"to come to work"

영화를 보러 가다  
"to go to see a movie"

영화를 보러 오다  
"to come to see a movie"

재 가다  
"to go to sleep," "to go to bed"

재 오다  
"to come to sleep," "to come to bed"

Verb stems ending in ㄴ will add 러 to the end.

놀러 가다  
"to go to play"

놀러 오다  
"to come to play"

This chapter's conversation uses the verb **나가다**, which means "to leave" (literally, it means "to go out from where you are and go somewhere else"). The opposite of this word is **나오다**, which means "to come out" (or literally, "to go out from where you are and come here").

영화를 보러 나가다  
"to go out to see a movie" or "to leave to see a movie"

### Advanced Notes:

Most commonly, you'll see words such as "who," "what," "where," "when," "why," and "how" used at the beginning of a sentence. But they can also come directly before a verb, just like an adverb.

### Eating 밥



**밥** means cooked rice, and when used together with **먹다** means "to eat cooked rice." However, because **밥** is so commonly used in Korea, this word has gained a more common meaning as simply "a meal."

Unless it is already clear, it's important to specify what is being eaten by saying it before using the verb **먹다**.

저는 먹습니다.  
"I eat."

The above sentence, while grammatically correct, would only be acceptable if the person you are speaking to already knows what you are referring to eating. The following sentence would be clearer.

저는 밥을 **먹** 싶습니다.  
"I want to eat (a meal)."

Note that the Object Marker **을** in **밥을 먹** is optional. However, I recommend using it at first until you feel more comfortable with how the Object Marker functions.

In fact, any time you see parentheses around a word or a syllable it means that it is optional and can be removed – or you can leave it as is.

This applies to every verb with **하다** and the Object Marker in parenthesis. For example, **공부(를) 하다** can be said as **공부를 하다** or **공하**다. Both are correct.

B: 오늘**에** 나갑니다. 어**제** 가고 싶습니까?  
"I leave tonight. Where do you want to go?"

**오늘** means "today," and **밤** means "night," so used together they mean "tonight." You can also use them separately.

오늘**에** 갑니다.  
"I'm leaving today."

**밤**에 **먹**습니다.  
"I'm eating at night."

오늘**에** **책**을 합니다.  
"I'm doing homework tonight."

The word 어디 by itself means "where," but you'll often see 에 added onto the end to add emphasis – "where to" or "where at." It should be noted though that this 에 is optional with 어디 just as it would be in English.

어디에 가고 싶습니까?  
"Where do you want to go to?"

어디가고 싶습니까?  
"Where do you want to go?"

어디에 있습니까?  
"Where is it at?"

어디있습니까?  
"Where is it?"

어디 can also be used with the verb 이다 (입니다) when asking where something is – instead of using 어디(에) 있다. This works in the same way as above.

집이 어딴습니까?  
"Where is the house?"

우리가 지금 어딴습니까?  
"Where are we now?"

A: 서울을 가고 싶습니다. 누가 갑니까?  
"I want to go to Seoul. Who is going?"

### More About Subject Markers

Before going over the above sentence, we need to talk a little bit more

about Subject Markers. A Subject Marker is a particle in Korean which marks a subject – a subject is something in a sentence that does something. Let's take a look at an example.

김 씨가 김치를 먹니까?  
"Does Mr. Kim eat kimchi?"

Here, the question is specifically asking about 김 씨. Because of that, 김 씨 is the subject of this sentence, and any subjects in a sentence need to be marked with a Subject Marker.

Although I'll go over the Subject Marker in more detail in a later chapter, for this chapter you should know that when you are asking a question, mark the subject of that sentence (whoever or whatever it is that you are asking about specifically) with the Subject Marker.

김영희 씨가 갑니까?  
"Will Mrs. Kim Yung-hee go?"

고양이가 개를 짹하니까?  
"Do cats like dogs?"

Remember that the Subject Marker is 이 when after a consonant, and 가 when after a vowel. They attach directly to the end of the word that they mark.

편  
책가

Also note that the Subject Marker (이 or 가) is different from the Topic Marker (은 or 는), which we will cover in a later lesson.

Let's finish the rest of the dialogue.

The word for "who" is 누구, but when 누구 is combined with a Subject Marker (누구 + 가), it changes to become 누가. Here "who" is being used as a subject in the sentence, since the speaker is specifically asking who will go.

B: 저와 김영희 씨와 김철수 선생님이 갑니다.  
"Me and Mrs. Kim Yung-hee and Mr. Kim Chul-soo are going."

This sentence makes 3 people the subject of the action – 저, 김영희 씨, and 김철수 선생님 are the ones who are going.

A: 김철수 선생님이 누구입니까?  
"Who is Mr. Kim Chul-soo?"

The Subject Marker is placed after 김철수 선생님, showing that he is the subject of this sentence. You'll find that Subject Markers commonly appear in sentences with questions.

We did not use 누가 here because the subject is not "who" but "Mr. Kim Chul-soo" that the speaker is asking about. For comparison, here is the sentence with 누가 as the subject.

누가 김철수 선생님입니까?  
"Who is Mr. Kim Chul-soo?"

In this sentence there is a stronger emphasis on "who," since "who" is the subject, while the original sentence emphasizes Mr. Kim Chul-soo. As the speaker, you can choose which words to emphasize in a sentence, changing the way it sounds. We will talk more about emphasis later.

B: 서울대학교입니다.  
"He is a Seoul University professor."

Notice how the words combine together – 서울대학교 – "Seoul University professor." Nouns can combine together in the same order as they do in English.

A: 아, 알겠습니다. 그러면 어떻게 갑니까?  
"Ah, I see. Well then how will you go?"

알겠습니다 is used to express "I see," or "Understood." It comes from the verb 알다 ("to know," "to understand"), which is another form of the verb 앎 ("to know").

그러면 means "well then," and can only be used at the beginning of a sentence.

B: 우리는 걷습니다.  
"We are walking."

우리 means "we" or "us." 우리는 can be used in the same way as 저는.

#### Advanced Notes:

걷가다 comes from a combination of the verbs 걷다 ("to walk") and 가다 ("to go"). Together, it means "to walk (in order to get somewhere)," or simply "to walk (somewhere)."

Its opposite is therefore 걷오다, which is a combination of 걷다 ("to walk") and 오다 ("to come"), and means "to walk (in order to come here)," or simply "to walk (here)."

#### Culture Notes:

The largest city in South Korea is 서울 by far, with a population of over 10 million people (and a metropolitan population of 20 million). Within 서울 there are several top universities, the most famous and prestigious being 서울대학교 and 고려대학교 and 연세대학교. Korean students will spend their entire academic lives competing with each other for a spot at one of these exclusive universities, for graduating from a top university in Korea helps to secure a bright financial future. Not going to college is seen by others as a failure, and the pressures of college acceptance are a constant source of stress and depression for students in Korea.



Other major cities in South Korea include 부산 in the South, 대구 in the East, and 대전 in the West. Of course there are other cities as well, but these are the biggest of the big.

## Practice

Translate to English:

1. 저는 밥을 먹러 갑니다.
2. 오날 김 씨가 어메 갑니까?
3. 뭐는 회에 갑니다.
4. 저는 일을 하러 갑니다.
5. 화장실 어메 있습니까?

Translate to Korean:

6. "Who is Mr. Park?"
7. "Who do you love?"
8. "We want to go."
9. "When do you want to eat (a meal)?"
10. "Where is the house?"

## New Phrases

알습니다. - "I see.," "Understood."

## New Vocabulary

이/가 - Subject Marker

언제 - "when"

어디 "where"

누구/누가 - "who"

왜 - "why"

어떻게 - "how"

일(을) 하다 - "to work"

잠 "sleep"

([잠을]) 자 - "to sleep"

일어나다 - "to wake up"

가방 "bag"

우리 - "we," "us"

나라 - "country"

우리 나라 - "Korea" (literally, "our country")

그러면 "well then"

오늘 "today"

내일 - "tomorrow"

어제 - "yesterday"

밤 "night"

교수 - "professor"

박사 "doctor" (someone holding a PhD)

의사 "(medical) doctor"

가수 - "singer"

대학 "university"

고등학교 "high school"

중학교 "middle school"

초등학교 "elementary school"

교실 "classroom"

교육 "education"

화장실 "bathroom"

냉장고 - "refrigerator"

냉동 "freezer"

침 "bed"

침 "bedroom"

천장 "ceiling"

지붕 "roof"

거실 "living room"

방 "room"

문 - "door"

열 "key"

다니다 - "to attend (school)," "to commute (to work)"

서울 "Seoul"

나가다 - "to leave," "to go out"

나오다 - "to come out"

걷 - "to walk"

어딘가 - "to walk (somewhere)"

뛰다 - "to run"

뛰 - "to fly," "to jump," "to run"

밥(을) 먹 - "to eat (a meal)"

밥 - "(cooked) rice," "a meal"

쌀 "(uncooked) rice"

살 - "flesh," "fat"

빵 "bread"

떡 "rice cake"

버터 - "butter"

캔디 "candy"

과자 "snacks"

탕 "sweets"

설탕 "sugar"

꿀 "honey"

소금 - "salt"

후추 "pepper"

식초 "vinegar"

후식 "dessert"

아침식사 "breakfast" (literally, "morning meal")

점심 - "lunch" (literally, "afternoon meal")

저녁 - "dinner" (literally, "evening meal")

알다 - "to know," "to understand"

## Chapter 9: Adjectives

Adjectives make sentences more interesting, and allow us to express ourselves in more detail. We'll learn in this chapter how to describe people and things using adjectives – specifically, descriptive verbs in Korean.

### Conversation



웨이터: 뭣 **맛**습니까?

김철수: 김치가 아주 **맛** 있습니다. **맛**습니다.

웨이터: 아, **출**니다.

김철수: 하지만 **뽕**이 조금 차갑습니다.

웨이터: **춥**습니다.

김철수: 그리고 **땡**도 조금 **춥**습니다.

웨이터: **땡** **춥**습니까?

김철수: 네그리고 **웬** **땡** **춥**다.

Before we go over today's conversation, let's learn a little bit about adjectives.

In Korean, many adjectives actually come from verbs.

Specifically, adjectives in Korean are called descriptive verbs, meaning they're verbs that are used to describe things – it's okay to just call them adjectives if that's easier.

So far in this book, every verb we learned before this chapter has been an action verb (action verbs are all verbs which involve doing something, such as "to eat," "to go," "to see," etc.). From now on, we will be learning both descriptive verbs and action verbs.

In order to use a descriptive verb in a sentence, we must first conjugate it. Conjugating a descriptive verb in the present tense is similar to conjugating an action verb.

Let's learn how to conjugate a descriptive verb in the present tense.

Descriptive Verb Stem + **ㅂ니다/습니다**

Look familiar? That's because conjugating a descriptive verb in the present tense – with the **니다** form – is the same as conjugating an action verb in the present tense.

Take the verb stem and add **ㅂ니다** if it ends in a vowel, or add **습니다** if it ends in a consonant.

출다 → 출 + 습니다  
→ 출습니다

예쁘다 → 예~~쁘~~ㅂ니다  
→ 예~~뽕~~다

#### Advanced Notes:

Although 예~~쁘~~ is the correct spelling, you might also come across 이~~쁘~~ which is a popular variation. They are the same thing.

웨이터: 맛 괜찮니까?  
"Is the flavor okay?"

The waiter is asking whether or not the flavor is okay. Therefore, 맛 is the subject and needs to be marked with the Subject Marker.

Another way to translate this sentence could be, "Does it taste okay?"

김철수: 김치가 아주 맛 있습니다. 감사합니다.  
"The kimchi is very delicious. Thank you."

아주 is an adverb which means "very." It is used directly before a verb.

아주 작습니다.  
"It is very small."

아주 예쁩니다.  
"It is very pretty."

맛 있다 can also be said as 맛있다. Remember that any time you see parentheses around a word or syllable in a chapter's New Vocabulary section, it means it is optional and can be removed – or you can use it as is.

감사합니다 is going to be one of the most important Korean phrases we will learn in this book. Memorize it and use it often whenever appropriate.

### Advanced Notes:

Another way to say "thank you" is with the verb 고맙 – 고맙습니다. They both mean the same thing, but using the verb 감사합니다 is a bit more polite than using 고맙.

웨이터: 아, 좋습니다.  
"Ah, good."

김철수: 하지만 **밥**이 조금 차갑습니다.  
"But the fried rice is a little cold."

**조금** is an adverb that means "a little," as in "I eat a little" or "I study a little."

저는 조금 **먹**습니다.  
"I eat a little."

저는 조금 **공부**합니다.  
"I study a little."

**조금** can be also combined with the particle **만** to mean "only a little."

저는 **정**조금만 **먹**습니다.  
"I really eat only a little."

**춥다** and **차갑다**



Both **춥다** and **차갑다** mean "to be cold," but are each used differently. **춥다** is used when you're talking about the weather, or the temperature of the air in a room; if you feel cold, **춥다** is the word to use. If you're talking about something being "cold to the touch," such as a beverage, or an item, or another person's skin, then **차갑다** is the word to use.

의자 **차갑**습니다!  
"The chair is cold!"

오늘 **아주** **춥**습니다!  
"Today is very cold!"



커피가 차갑습니다.  
"The coffee is cold."

한국도 춥습니까?  
"Is Korea cold too?"

웨이터: 죄송합니다.  
"I'm sorry."

죄송합니다 is another important phrase to learn, and means "I'm sorry."  
Hopefully, you won't have to say this too often.

#### Advanced Notes:

Another way to say "sorry" is using the verb 미안하다 – 미안합니다. They both mean the same thing, but using 죄송하다 sounds a bit more polite than 미안하다.

김철수: 그리고 식당도 조금 춥습니다.  
"And the restaurant is also a little cold."

그리고 means "and" or "also," and is used at the beginning of a sentence.

그리고 저는 좋습니다!  
"And, I am nice!"

그리고 김 씨도 먹러 갑니다.  
"Also, Mr. Kim is going to eat too."

웨이터: 많이 춥습니까?  
"Is it cold a lot?"

Although the translation "a lot" seems a bit awkward in English, the adverb 많이 is the opposite of 조금, and means "a lot." For a more natural sounding sentence, it might be better to translate this sentence

to English as "Is it really cold?"

저는 **많** 먹습니다.

"I eat a lot."

저는 커피를 **많** 씹니다.

"I drink a lot of coffee."

저는 영화를 **많** 꺽합니다.

"I like movies a lot."

저는 영화를 **많** 뵙니다.

"I watch a lot of movies."

As an adverb, **많** will go directly before a verb.

김철수: 네그리고 음식 **많** 비쌉니다.

"Yes. And the food is very expensive."

### Practice

Identify the following verbs as descriptive verbs or action verbs:

1. 타
2. 딱
3. 작
4. 수영(을) 하다
5. 내다
6. 땀

Translate to English:

7. 김 씨가 을 정말 **많** 씹니다.

8. 오늘저는 조금 춥습니다.

9. 뭘 차갑습니까?

Translate to Korean:

10. "The soup is a little cold."

11. "Today is very cold."

12. "I really like Korea."

### New Phrases

감사합니다. - "Thank you."

죄송합니다. - "I'm sorry."

### New Vocabulary

감사하다 - "to be grateful"

죄송하다 - "to be sorry"

웨이터 - "waiter"

당 - "restaurant"

그리고 - "and," "also"

그래서 - "so," "therefore"

볶밥 - "fried rice"

아주 - "very" (adverb)

조금 - "a little"

조금만 - "only a little"

많 - "a lot" (adverb)

맛 "flavor"

춥다 - "to be cold" (weather)

차갑다 - "to be cold" (to the touch)

덥다 - "to be hot" (weather)

뜨겁다 - "to be hot" (to the touch)  
따뜻하다 - "to be warm" (weather, or to the touch)  
시원하다 - "to be cool" (weather, or to the touch)  
맑다 - "to be bright and clear" (weather)  
괜찮다 - "to be okay," "to be alright"  
악하다 - "to be evil"  
맛있다 - "to be delicious"  
멋있다 - "to be cool," "to be stylish"  
잘다 - "to be good"  
나쁘다 - "to be bad"  
예쁘다 - "to be pretty"  
아름답다 - "to be beautiful"  
크다 - "to be big"  
배고파 - "to be hungry"  
목(이) 마다 - "to be thirsty"  
흔하다 - "to be common"  
드물다 - "to be rare"  
내다 - "to pay (money)"  
작다 - "to be small"  
수영(을) 하다 - "to swim"  
의자 "chair"  
비싸다 - "to be expensive"  
맵다 - "to be spicy"  
커피 "coffee"  
수프 "soup"  
날씨 "weather"  
비가 오다 - "to rain"  
눈이 오다 - "to snow"  
술 "alcohol"  
담배 "tobacco," "cigarettes"  
친하다 - "to be nice"  
강하다 - "to be strong"  
약하다 - "to be weak"

## Chapter 10: More Adjectives

Now that we've learned about descriptive verbs in the previous chapter, let's go over how to use them to directly describe people and things – "This is a cold soda," as opposed to "The soda is cold."

### Conversation 1



한승규: 김 선생님이 어떤 **사람**이니까?

이선주: 아주 **잘** **알** **림**니다.

한승규: 재미있는 **사람**이니까?

이선주: **너**재미있고 **높** **알** **림**니다.

### Conjugating Descriptive Verbs

We've learned how to conjugate descriptive verbs in the present tense already in the last chapter. Here we'll learn how to conjugate a descriptive verb so it can be used directly before the noun, just like an adjective in English.

Take a look at the following two sentences:

김 씨가 좋습니다.  
"Mr. Kim is good."

This is the type of sentence we learned in the last chapter. But what if you want to say "Mr. Kim is a good person" instead?

김 씨가 **좋은** 사람입니다.  
"Mr. Kim is a good person."

Notice that the adjective "good" (the descriptive verb) comes directly before the noun "person," just like in English; **좋은** is therefore the adjective form (to be used directly before a noun) of the descriptive verb **좋다**.

Descriptive verbs can be used at the end of a sentence, such as in the first example, "Mr. Kim is good." Or, descriptive verbs can be used just like an adjective in English – that is, directly before a noun they are describing.

Depending on the verb stem, there can be a few different rules for how to conjugate a descriptive verb to behave like an English adjective.

Descriptive Verb Stem + **ㄴ/은**

This is how to conjugate most descriptive verbs. Korean has some verbs which are exceptions and do not follow this rule, but I'll point them out as we go along.

To use a descriptive verb before a noun, take the verb stem and attach **ㄴ** if it ends in a vowel, or attach **은** if it ends in a consonant. Here are some examples using this general form.

**친하다** → **친하** + **ㄴ**  
→ **친한**

착한 사람 a nice person"

좋은 → 좋 은

→ 좋

좋은 생각 a good idea"

예쁘다 → 예쁘 L

→ 예쁜

예쁜 여자 a pretty girl"

낮은 → 낮 은

→ 낮

낮은 등급 a low grade"

## Descriptive Verbs Ending in ㅁ

This is only for verb stems which end in a single ㅁ at the bottom.  
These verbs conjugate differently.

Take the verb stem, remove the ㅁ, add ㅜ then conjugate as normal by adding L.

쉽다 → 쉽 ㅁ → 쉬 ㅜ → 쉬우 L

→ 쉬운

쉬운 과제 "easy homework"

어렵다 → 어렵 ㅁ → 어려 ㅜ → 어려우 L

→ 어려운

어려운 일 "difficult work"

무겁다 → 무겁 ㅁ → 무거 ㅜ → 무거우 L

→ 무거운

무거운 가방 heavy bag"

새끼 → 새끼 + 우 → 새끼 + ㄴ  
→ 새끼  
새끼 주방 "new kitchen"

Both 주방 and 새끼 mean "kitchen." Feel free to use either one.

This rule does not include verbs which have anything more than a single ㅁ at the bottom. The descriptive verb 짧 (pronounced 짧) has both a ㅁ and a ㅁ on the bottom, so it would simply conjugate as normal.

짧 → 짧 은  
→ 짧 (pronounced 짧)  
짧 시간 "a short time"

For verbs ending in ㅁ in the present tense, you will always add 은 after removing the ㅁ. Just keep in mind the actual steps involved, as they will come in handy later on when we learn different verb tenses.

### Descriptive Verbs Ending in ㅁ

This is only for verb stems which end in a single ㅁ at the bottom. These verbs also conjugate differently.

Take the verb stem, remove the ㅁ, then conjugate as normal by adding ㄴ.

길 → 길 ㅁ → 기 + ㄴ  
→ 긴  
긴 머리 "long hair"

머리 can mean either "head" or "hair" (on one's head) depending on the context. An alternative is to use 머리 which only means "(head) hair."



떨다 → 멀 ㄹ → 마 ㄴ  
→ 먼  
먼집 "a far house"

달다 → 달 ㄹ → 다 + ㄴ  
→ 단  
단과 "a sweet apple"

### Advanced Notes:

There are a few verbs that don't follow these rules, such as 어떻게, 그렇다, and 이렇다. For these verbs, first remove the ㅎ from the verb stem, then conjugate as normal by adding ㄴ.

어떻다 → 어떻 - ㅎ → 어따 ㄴ  
→ 어떤  
어떤 "what kind of person"

그렇다 → 그렇 - ㅎ → 그러 + ㄴ  
→ 그런  
그런 "that kind of work"

이렇다 → 이렇 - ㅎ → 이러 + ㄴ  
→ 이런  
이런 "this kind of food"

It is not yet necessary to memorize the above verbs 어떻게 ("to be how"), 그렇다 ("to be so"), and 이렇다 ("to be this way"). However, it would help to be able to understand how these verbs are the origin of the adjectives 어떤 "what kind of"), 그런 "that kind of"), and 이런 "this kind of").

### Conjugating 있다

The exception to the above rules is the verb 있다, which means "to exist." 있다 conjugates in a special way.

### Advanced Notes:

Actually, 있다 ("to exist") is not a **descriptive verb**, but an **action verb**. However, because 있다 appears in many descriptive verbs, such as 재미(가) 있다 and others, I've included it in this chapter.

있다 becomes 있는 when used to describe things as an adjective.

있다 → 있 + 는  
→ 있는

재미있다 → 재미있 + 는  
→ 재미있는  
재미있는 사람 a fun person"

맛 있다 → 맛 있 + 는  
→ 맛 있는  
맛 있는 음식 delicious food"

Remember that all of these rules only apply when you're using descriptive verbs directly before nouns. At the end of a sentence, everything goes back to normal.

저는 매운 음식을 좋아합니다.  
"I like spicy food."

한국 음식이 아주 맵습니다.  
"Korean food is very spicy."

김 씨가 재미있는 사람입니다.  
"Mr. Kim is a fun person."

김 씨가 재미있습니다.  
"Mr. Kim is fun."

Make sure to review each of these rules and understand them before continuing. Now let's go over the first conversation for this chapter.

한승규: 김 선생님이 어떤 사람입니까?  
"What kind of person is Mr. Kim?"

Since we're asking specifically about 김 선생님, we used the Subject

Marker (here, 이) to mark him as the subject of this sentence.

어떤 is already an adjective, and can be attached to a noun. Above it is attached before 사람

이선주: 아주 좋 습니다.  
"He is a very good person."

Although we've covered it before, I'd like to point out again how 입니다 is used to mean "he is" in this sentence. Since it's already established what the other person is asking ("What kind of person is Mr. Kim?"), there's no need to restate 김 선생님 in this reply. However, it would not be wrong to reply with the following sentence instead:

김 선생님이 아주 좋 습니다.  
"Mr. Kim is a very good person."

Although this would not be incorrect, it would simply be a bit repetitive.

Avoid Repetitive Korean

~~I~~ like kimchi.

In Korean, pronouns such as "he," "she," and "it" are simply not necessary as long as it's already clear who or what you are talking about.

In the same way, it's unnecessary to repeat any noun if it's clear what you're talking about. We've already seen this in action in previous chapters, but let's take a look at some more examples.

Q: 김치를 좋아합니까?  
"Do you like kimchi?"

A: 네김치를 **좋**합니다.  
"Yes, I like kimchi."

The previous sentences are an example of a simple exchange between two people. However, it would be perfectly acceptable (and in fact, more natural sounding) to reply in this way instead:

A: 네**것**을 **좋**합니다.  
"Yes, I like it."

Just as we didn't need to repeat 김 선생님 in the first conversation, it's not necessary to repeat 김치 either, assuming it's clear to the listener what we are talking about. In English, we might replace these words with "it," "he," "she," or "they," but in Korean such words are usually not needed.

Let's continue going over the conversation.

한승규: 재미있는 **사람**니까?  
"Is he a fun person?"

Again, here it is also not necessary to repeat "Mr. Kim," as it's already been established who they're talking about.

이선주: **네**재미있고 **밝은** **사람**입니다.  
"Yes, he is a fun and bright person."

In Chapter 7 we learned how to connect nouns together in a sentence using **와** and **과**. Here is how to connect two (or more) separate sentences together.

As you listen to native Korean speakers talk, you may notice that **사람** ("person") and **것** ("thing") are used quite frequently in Korean after

adjectives, as shown in this chapter, when describing people or objects.

### Verb Stem + 고

Take the verb stem and add 고. Then, attach a second connecting sentence.

저는 먹고 갑니다.  
"I eat and leave."

김 선생님이 재미있고 밝은 사람입니다.  
"Mr. Kim is a fun and bright person."

저는 공부하고 시험을 봅니다.  
"I study and take a test."

저는 미국 사람이고 한국을 좋아합니다.  
"I am an American and I like Korea."

These are each two separate sentences connected by their verbs to become one new sentence.

고 is versatile, and can also be used to connect descriptive verbs together, even outside of a complete sentence. Let's look at a few more examples.

크고 맛있는 케이크  
"a big and delicious cake"

저는 크고 맛있는 케이크를 먹고 싶습니다.  
"I want to eat a big and delicious cake."

빠르고 저렴한 컴퓨터  
"a fast and cheap computer"

저는 빠르고 **싼** 컴퓨터를 원합니다.  
"I want a fast and cheap computer."

**쉽** 재미있는 **방법**  
"an easy and fun method"

저는 **쉽** 재미있는 **방법**을 찾습니다.  
"I'm looking for an easy and fun method."

**찾** can mean both "to look for" and "to find" depending on the context of the sentence. In the above sentence, it means "to look for," but in the following sentence it means "to find."

저는 **쉽** 재미있는 **방법**을 **찾**습니다.  
"I want to find an easy and fun method."

## Conversation 2



김영희: 저는 잘생긴 **남**을 **찾**습니다. 철수 씨는요? 어떤~~여~~를 **찾**하니까?

김철수: 저는 예쁜~~여~~를 **찾**합니다.

김영희: 제가 예쁜~~여~~책니까?

김철수: **כן**. 제가 잘생긴 **남**이니까?

김영희: 저는 잘생긴 **남**을 **찾**합니다. 철수 씨는요? 어떤~~여~~를 **찾**하니까?

"I like handsome men. What about you, Chul-soo? What kind of girls do you like?"

For the time being, only use 잘생기다 as an adjective – 잘생긴. Don't conjugate it at the end of a sentence (잘생깁니다 would be incorrect). We'll learn more about this verb in Chapter 20.

김철수: 저는 예쁜이를 좋아합니다.  
"I like pretty girls."

Just like in English, 예쁘다 ("to be pretty") is used exclusively for females, and 잘생기다 ("to be handsome") is used exclusively for males.

김영희: 제가 예쁜이입니까?  
"Am I a pretty girl?"

Here we have a word that looks new – 제가. However, 제가 is simply 저 ("I" or "me") combined with the Subject Marker (here, 가). Remember from Chapter 8 how 누구 becomes 누가 when combined with the Subject Marker? Here in the same way, 저 becomes 제가 when combined with the Subject Marker.

We use the Subject Marker here because 김영희 is asking about herself specifically, so she is the subject of her own question.

김철수: ~~아니~~. 제가 잘생긴 ~~남자~~입니까?  
"Well... am I a handsome man?"

~~아니~~ means "Well..." and is used only at the beginning of a sentence to show that you're considering something.

## Practice

Translate to English:

1. 김철수 씨가 어떤 사람입니까?
2. 어떤 영화를 좋아합니까?
3. 저는 재미있는 영화를 좋아합니다.
4. 매운 음식을 꼭 드시겠습니까?
5. 짧은 영화를 좋아합니까?
6. 저는 그런 영화를 좋아합니다.
7. 오늘저는 뭘 하고 책을 합니다.

Translate to Korean:

8. "What kind of person am I?"
9. "I dislike that kind of food."
10. "I am a good person."
11. "Where is the pretty girl?"
12. "Mrs. Kim Yung-hee is very pretty."
13. "Do you like long movies?"
14. "No. I like short and entertaining movies."

### New Phrases

응. - "Well..."



## New Vocabulary

케이크 "cake"

것 "a thing"

머리 - "head," "hair"

머리카락 "hair"

털 "hair (not on head)," "fur"

뿔 "horn(s)"

몸 "body"

눈 "eye"

입 - "mouth"

입술 "lips"

심장 "heart"

어깨 "shoulder"

배 "belly"

위 - "stomach"

허리 - "waist"

이(빨) - "tooth," "teeth"

혀 "tongue"

코 "nose"

귀 "ear"

발 "foot"

발가락 "toe"

다리 - "leg"

팔 "arm"

목 - "neck," "throat"

소리 - "sound," "noise"

목소리 - "voice"

가슴 "chest"

등 "back (of body)"

손 "hand"

손가락 "finger"

건강하다 - "to be healthy"

건강 "health"

아파 - "to be in pain," "to be painful," "to be sick"

피곤하다 - "to be tired," "to be exhausted"

졸다 - "to be sleepy"

쉬다 - "to rest"

바빠 - "to be busy"

부엌 "kitchen"

주방 "kitchen"

한국 음식 "Korean food"

한식 "Korean food" (abbreviation)

일본 음식 "Japanese food"

일식 "Japanese food" (abbreviation)

미국 음식 "American food"

미식 "American food" (abbreviation)

중국 음식 "Chinese food"

중식 "Chinese food" (abbreviation)

낮 - "to be low"

높 - "to be high"

학년 "(school) grade"

쉽 - "to be easy"

단순하다 - "to be simple"

어렵 - "to be difficult"

길 - "to be long"

멀 - "to be far"

달 - "to be (sugary) sweet"

맛있다 - "to be (deliciously) sweet"

짜 - "to be bitter"

시다 - "to be sour"

어둡 - "to be dark"

밝 - "to be bright"

어떻다 - "to be how"

그렇다 - "to be so"

이렇다 - "to be this way"

어떤 "what kind of" (adjective)

그런 "that kind of" (adjective)  
이런 "this kind of" (adjective)  
짧 - "to be short (in length)"  
생각 "an idea," "a thought"  
생(각)을 하다 - "to think"  
잘생기다 - "to be handsome"  
잘생긴 - "handsome" (adjective)  
재미(가) 있다 - "to be fun," "to be entertaining"  
빠르다 - "to be fast"  
되다 - "to be slow"  
싸 - "to be cheap"  
저렴하다 - "to be inexpensive"  
뚱뚱 - "to be heavy"  
가볍 - "to be light"  
중하다 - "to be important"  
새롭 - "to be new"  
귀엽 - "to be cute"  
추하다 - "to be ugly"  
깨끗하다 - "to be clean"  
더럽 - "to be dirty"  
시험(을) 보다 - "to take a test"  
방법 "method," "way"  
잡 - "to grab," "to catch"  
찾 - "to look for," "to find"  
컴퓨터 - "computer"

## Chapter 11: Colors

Colors are another unique topic in Korean, as they also work similarly to adjectives. We'll also learn several new important vocabulary words, such as "this" and "that," as well as "here" and "there."

### Conversation



A: 그건 뭘니까?

B: 무슨 뭘니까?

A: 거기에 그 하얀 뭘니까.

B: 아, 이쥬 일본국기입니다.

A: 아, 네그림저기에 저쥬 뭘니까?

B: 저쥬 태극기입니다.

A: 뭉 리쥬 무슨 뭘니까?

B: 빨간 뭘니까.

A: 저의 왓 끝 쥬 뭘니까.

Take a look at the vocabulary section for this chapter before continuing. You'll notice several different words for each color. Some of them are descriptive verbs, some are adjectives (descriptive verbs that have already been conjugated so they can be used directly before a

noun), and some are nouns themselves.

"How can a color be a verb?"

In English, all colors can act as nouns or as adjectives.

"I like blue." (noun)

"I like the blue car." (adjective)

In Korean, colors can also come from descriptive verbs.

파랗다 "to be blue"

하늘이 파랗습니다.

"The sky is blue."

노랗다 "to be yellow"

연필이 노랗습니다.

"The pencil is yellow."

These descriptive verbs can also be conjugated into adjectives.

파랗다 "blue"

파란새

"blue bird"

노랗다 "yellow"

노란우산

"yellow umbrella"

Color adjectives can then be conjugated into nouns by adding 색 directly

to the end, which means "color."

**파란** blue" (literally, "blue color")

하늘이 파란입니다.  
"The sky is blue."

**노란** yellow" (literally, "yellow color")

연필이 노란입니다.  
"The pencil is yellow."

I've included the original descriptive verbs of the colors in this lesson for your reference, but feel free to only learn the noun and adjective forms for now, as they are much more common.

However, some Korean colors do not come from a descriptive verb, and therefore work more simply.

**초록** green" (noun/adjective)

**초록** can be used as a noun, or as an adjective, just like colors in English.

초록을 좋아합니다.  
"I like green." (noun)

**초록**에

"a green pen" (adjective)

And finally, sometimes there can be more than one word for the same color, such as for black and for white. Feel free to use either one.

까만 or 검 (adjective)

까만 고양이  
"a black cat"

검은 모니터  
"a black monitor"

까만색 or 검정(noun)

까만색을 좋아합니다.  
"I like black."

검정 예뻐다.  
"Black is pretty."

As colors are used frequently in conversation, with a bit of practice you'll easily become able to identify them and use them for yourself.

### Advanced Notes:

In addition to **색** which I mentioned above, all colors ending in **색** can actually be used as adjectives as well. The meaning is the same.

노랑색 yellow snake"

노랑색 yellow(-colored) snake"

Now let's go over the conversation together.

A: 그게 뭐니까?  
"What is that?"

이, 그, and 저



Let's go over what these three adjectives mean, and how to use them.

이 "this"

이 is used for things which are close to the speaker, just like "this" in English.

이것  
"this thing"

이 펜  
"this pen"

이 맛 있는 요리  
"this delicious cooking"

그 "that"

그 is used for things which are close to the listener, but far from the speaker.

그것  
"that thing"

그 공  
"that ball"



그 빨간 드레스  
"that red dress"

저 "that" (farther)

저 is used for things which are far from both the speaker and the listener.

저것  
"that thing"

저 건물  
"that building"

저 코뿔이 집  
"that big and scary house"

Going back to the conversation, in this sentence 그것은 something that is far from the speaker, but close to the listener.

Note that the words 이것그것 and 저것 are written as one word without any spaces. These are the most common words for saying "this thing," "that thing," and "that (farther) thing."

In addition, since 이, 그, and 저 are adjectives, they cannot be used by themselves, and therefore must be used before another word.

B: 무슨 일입니까?  
"What?"

무슨 일입니까 literally means "what words." The expression above can be used for asking what someone else is talking about, when you really have no idea.

We'll cover **준** more detail in just a moment.

A: 거기에 그 하**얀**입니다.  
"That white thing there."

여기, 거기, and 저기

Let's go over what these nouns mean, and how to use them.

여기 "here"

Like 이, 여기 is used for places that are close to the speaker.

여기에 올까?  
"Are you coming here?"

여기가 정말 **좋**습니다.  
"Here is really good."

거기 "there"

Like 그, 거기 is used for places that are close to the listener, but far from the speaker.

저는 거기에 갑니다.  
"I am going there (to you)."

거기가 어떤 **곳**입니까?  
"What kind of place is there?"

저기 "there" (farther)

Like 저, 저기 is used for places that are far from both the speaker and

the listener.

저기가 아주 뽽다.  
"There is very far."

저기에 뽽 있습니까?  
"What is (over) there?"

여기, 거기, and 저기 will often appear early in a sentence; if there is no pronoun (such as 저는) then they will often appear at the very beginning of a sentence.

Going back to the conversation again, 거기에 is simply 거기 combined with 에 ("to," "at," or "in") to mean "at there." When stating that something exists somewhere, it's proper to include 에 to show where that thing exists at.

여기에 선뽽 있습니다.  
"There is a present (at) here."

Notice that the above sentence uses the verb 있다 ("to exist") and not the verb 이다 ("to be"). This is because what we are actually saying is "There exists a present here" and not "This here equals a present." It's important to realize that 이다 only means "to be" in the sense of being equal to something else.

여기에 선뽽니다.  
"This (in) here is a present."

This sentence, while also grammatically correct, has an entirely different meaning than the previous one using 있다.

Also, notice how in the conversation 하안 comes directly before the noun, and 그 goes before it. Words like 이, 그, and 저 will always allow other

adjectives to go in front, because other adjectives are more important in describing the noun.

그 초록산  
"that green mountain"

B: 아, 이쥬 일본국기입니다.  
"Ah, this is a Japanese flag."

A: 아, 네그럼저기에 저쥬 뭘니까?  
"Ah, okay. Well then, what is that thing there?"

Although 네 means "yes," it can also be used as a way to confirm that you've heard or understood something, much like "okay" is said in English.

저는 지금 딱러 갑니다.  
"I'm going to eat now."

네저도 딱러 갑니다.  
"Okay. I'm going to eat too."

B: 저쥬 태국입니다.  
"That is the Korean national flag."

### A Note on the Topic Marker

Notice in the above sentence how the speaker switched from the Subject Marker in the previous sentence (이쥬) to the Topic Marker in this sentence (저쥬).

You can think of the Topic Marker (은/는) as meaning "as for" (as opposed to something or someone else) when used anywhere in a sentence.

The Topic Marker is 은 when following a consonant, or 는 when following a vowel. It attaches directly after the word it applies to.

저것은 거울입니다.

"As for that thing, it's a mirror."

김 씨는 착한 사람입니다.

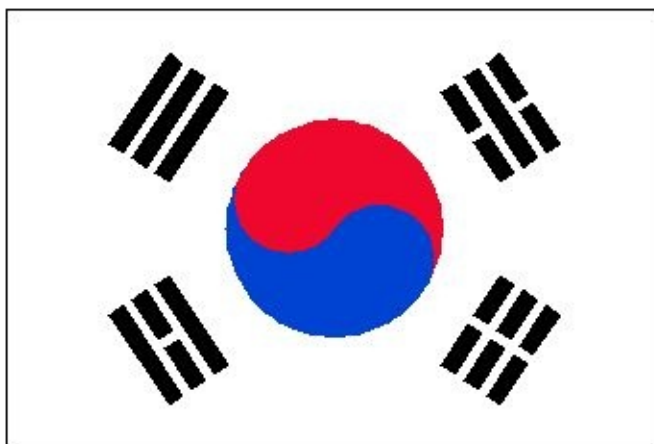
"As for Mr. Kim, he is a nice person."

저는 미국 사람입니다.

"As for me, I am American."

We'll learn about the Topic Marker and Subject Marker in more detail in Chapter 15, but keep this in mind whenever you see the Topic Marker from now on.

#### Culture Notes:



태극기 is the Korean national flag. The circle in the center represents yin (blue – negative force) and yang (red – positive force) – the balancing forces in the universe. The white background represents purity, and the black lines represent harmony between the sky, sun, earth, and moon.

A: 동그아닌 무엇입니까?

"What color is the round thing?"

Previously we learned that **무엇** is the noun for "what." **무엇은** is the adjective for "what." It is used directly before a noun.

**무엇을 좋아합니까?**  
"What do you like?"

**무엇을 좋아합니까?**  
"What color do you like?"

**이것이 무엇입니까?**  
"What is this?"

**무엇입니까?**  
"What book is it?"

**무엇을 먹고 싶습니까?**  
"What do you want to eat?"

**무엇을 좋아합니까?**  
"What food do you like?"

**B: 빨간색과 파란색입니다.**  
"It is red and blue."

**A: 저의 옷과 같은 색입니다.**  
"It is the same color as my clothes."

## Possessive Marker **의**

Up until now, we haven't had any way to say that something belonged to anyone. In Korean, saying that something is "mine" or "his" is done by simply attaching **의** after the person who owns it, followed by what it is that they own. You can think of it as meaning 's, as in "Mr. Kim's

laptop."

Whenever the Possessive Marker is used, it is most commonly pronounced the same as 예. This rule only applies to when 의 is used as the Possessive Marker; if 의 appears in other situations, such as in part of another word, it cannot be pronounced 예.

김 씨의 랩톱  
"Mr. Kim's laptop"

저의 차  
"my car"

저의 방  
"my room"

As expected, 의 replaces the Topic Marker (은/는), Subject Marker (이/가), or Object Marker (을/를) when used in this way.

의 can also be used after things, and not only after people. In this way, it can also translate as "of," such as in "the walls of the building"

건물의 벽  
"the walls of the building," or "the building's walls"

신뢰 문제  
"a problem of trust," or "a trust problem"

And here's another useful phrase you can say with 의:

저의 이름 \_\_\_\_\_입니다.  
"My name is \_\_\_\_\_."

When 저 combines with 의, you can have two outcomes; one is 저의,

and the other is simply 제. Both ways are acceptable, though more often in conversation 제 will be preferred because it's shorter.

저의 친구  
"my friend"

제 친구  
"my friend"

제 이름을 김철수입니다.  
"My name is Kim Chul-soo."

"Like"

같 is a descriptive verb that means "to be the same" or "to be like."  
When combined with 와/과, it means "to be the same as."

이것 그것 같습니다.  
"This is the same as that."

The item you are describing will come first (이것) followed by the item it is similar to (그것)

이 셔츠 저 셔츠 같습니다.  
"This shirt is the same as that shirt."

저와 같은 사람  
"a person like me"

Here, 같 is conjugated as an adjective to become 같은.

To emphasize that something or someone is exactly like something or someone else, use the descriptive verb 똑같 which means "to be exactly the same."



제 이름 같습니다.  
"It's exactly the same as my name."

The verb **같다** can also be used in the same way; it means "to be similar," so it's not as strong as using **같**.

이것 그쪽 조금 같습니다.  
"This is a little similar to that."

In contrast, the verb **다르다** ("to be different") can be used to express that someone or something is different from someone or something else.

이것 그쪽 조금 다릅니다.  
"This is a little different from that."

#### Culture Notes:

One more color you should know about is **살구색** the color of Asian skin. Koreans, when referring to their skin color or the skin color of Japanese and Chinese people, will use **살구색** this means "apricot color."

#### Practice

Translate to English:

1. 저는 **경아**를 원합니다.
2. 저 **짙** 립다.
3. 저의 **얼굴** **빨** 립니다.
4. 저 **만**은 **초** 립니다.

5. 저의 **책** 여기에 있습니다.

6. 이제 **그것** **즐**입니다.

7. 김철수 씨가 저 **와** **같은** **책**니까?

Translate to Korean:

8. "I want to eat a green apple."

9. "My clothes are red."

10. "As for cats, they are cute."

11. "I want to go there."

12. "This movie is fun."

13. "This hat is the same as that hat."

14. "That shirt is exactly the same as my shirt."

### New Phrases

저의 이름 \_\_\_\_입니다. - "My name is \_\_\_\_."

예(를) 들면 - "For example..."

### New Vocabulary

예 - "an example (of something)"

살구 - "apricot"

살구색 "apricot color"

시간 "time"

시대 "a period," "an age," "a generation"

셔츠 "shirt"

티셔츠 or T 셔츠 "T-shirt"

이름 "name"

얼굴 "face"

턱 "chin"

뺨 "cheek"

여름 "pimple," "acne"

주름 "wrinkle(s)"

옷 "clothing," "clothes"

속옷 "underwear"

모자 "hat"

의 - Possessive Marker

같 - "to be the same," "to be like"

똑같 - "to be exactly the same"

비슷하다 - "to be similar"

다르다 - "to be different"

빼 - "to remove"

추가(를) 하다 - "to add (to something)"

파 - "to beat," "to bash"

둥글다 - "to be round"

희망 "hope"

태극기 - "the Korean national flag"

국기 - "flag"

무엇 - "what" (adjective)

빨갳 - "to be red"

빨간 "red" (adjective)

빨간색 "red" (noun)

노랗 - "to be yellow"

노란 "yellow" (adjective)

노란색 "yellow" (noun)

파랗 - "to be blue"

파란 "blue" (adjective)

파란색 "blue" (noun)

초록 "green" (noun/adjective)

하얗 - "to be white"  
하얀 "white" (adjective)  
하얇 "white" (noun)  
흰 "white" (adjective)  
흰 "white" (noun)  
까맣 - "to be black"  
까만 - "black" (adjective)  
까만색 "black" (noun)  
검 "black" (adjective)  
검 "black" (noun)  
뱀 "snake"  
개구리 - "frog"  
이 - "this" (adjective)  
그 - "that" (adjective)  
저 - "that (farther)" (adjective)  
이것 "this thing"  
그것 "that thing"  
저것 "that thing (farther)"  
여기 - "here"  
거기 - "there"  
저기 - "there (farther)"  
요리 - "cooking"  
요리(를) 하다 - "to cook"  
섞 - "to mix"  
공 "ball"  
옷 "dress"  
꼰 "building"  
다리 - "bridge"  
צע - "a step"  
계단 "stairs"  
무섭 - "to be scary," "to be afraid"  
곳 "place" (noun)  
선물 "present"  
산 "mountain"

새 "bird"

말 "horse"

양 - "sheep"

완 "umbrella"

거울 "mirror"

벽 "wall"

창문) - "window"

노트북 "laptop" (literally, "notebook")

신뢰 "trust"

모니터 - "monitor"

문제 - "problem"

질문 - "question"

질문(을) 하다 - "to ask a question"

잘라다 - "to cut (off)," "to sever"

썰다 - "to cut (into)"

그럼 "well then"

## Chapter 12: Numbers

Did you know Korean has two different number systems? Each one is used in different situations. This chapter will focus on the first number system, Sino Korean numbers, as well as when and how to use it. We'll learn more about these two number systems in the next chapter.

### Conversation 1



김영희: 이것 얼마니까?  
직원: 그릇 삼만오천원입니다.  
김영희: 여기 뭘원입니다.  
직원: 네여기 천백원입니다.  
김영희: 감사합니다. 안녕히 계세요.

### Counting in Korean

Counting in Korean works differently than in English; in some ways it's more difficult (we'll get to this later), but in many ways it's much simpler. The best way to learn is to jump right in.

So let's go ahead and learn how to count from 1 to 99,999,999 in

Korean.

For numbers 1 through 10, simply count them as normal.

1 일  
2 이  
3 삼  
4 사  
5 오  
6 육  
7 칠  
8 팔  
9 구  
10 십

After 10, Korean numbers are made by breaking apart each of the digits, like simple math, then saying them in order one at a time.

11 = 10 & 1 → **십일**  
12 = 10 & 2 → **십이**  
19 = 10 & 9 → **십구**  
20 = 2 & 10 → **이십**  
21 = 2 & 10 & 1 → **이십일**  
50 = 5 & 10 → **오십**  
55 = 5 & 10 & 5 → **오십오**  
99 = 9 & 10 & 9 → **구십구**

Once you've hit the next amount for which there is a separate number (here being 100), switch to that in order to count higher. Continue in the same method as before.

100 백  
101 = 100 & 1 → **백일**  
111 = 100 & 10 & 1 → **백십일**

$202 = 2 \text{ \& } 100 \text{ \& } 2 \rightarrow$  이백이

$550 = 5 \text{ \& } 100 \text{ \& } 5 \text{ \& } 10 \rightarrow$  오백오십

1,000 천

$1,999 = 1000 \text{ \& } 9 \text{ \& } 100 \text{ \& } 9 \text{ \& } 10 \text{ \& } 9 \rightarrow$  천백구십

$9,876 = 9 \text{ \& } 1,000 \text{ \& } 8 \text{ \& } 100 \text{ \& } 7 \text{ \& } 10 \text{ \& } 6 \rightarrow$  구천백칠십

You can continue using this method to count as high as you would like.

10,000 만

$10,011 = 10,000 \text{ \& } 10 \text{ \& } 1 \rightarrow$  만십

$10,555 = 10,000 \text{ \& } 5 \text{ \& } 100 \text{ \& } 5 \text{ \& } 10 \rightarrow$  만오백오십

You can express numbers beyond 10,000 by adding 10, 100, or 1,000 before it to reach 10,000,000.

$100,000 = 10 \text{ \& } 10,000 \rightarrow$  십만

$1,000,000 = 100 \text{ \& } 10,000 \rightarrow$  백만

$10,000,000 = 1,000 \text{ \& } 10,000 \rightarrow$  천만

Here are some more examples of counting with high numbers.

$100,090 = 10 \text{ \& } 10,000 \text{ \& } 9 \text{ \& } 10 \rightarrow$  십만구십

$1,900,900 = 100 \text{ \& } 9 \text{ \& } 10 \text{ \& } 10,000 \text{ \& } 9 \text{ \& } 100 \rightarrow$  백구십만구백

$99,999,999 = 9 \text{ \& } 1,000 \text{ \& } 9 \text{ \& } 100 \text{ \& } 9 \text{ \& } 10 \text{ \& } 9 \text{ \& } 10,000 \text{ \& } 9 \text{ \& } 1,000 \text{ \& } 9 \text{ \& } 100 \text{ \& } 9 \text{ \& } 10 \text{ \& } 9 \rightarrow$  구천백구십만구천백구십

Numbers this large might be difficult to say in any language, so including them here is more to illustrate how numbers work (so don't feel bad if you're not able to calculate large numbers yet). Don't worry about memorizing any specific numbers besides the major milestones – 1 to 10, 100, 1,000, and 10,000. Knowing how these numbers come together to form larger numbers will allow you to create any number you wish from this small set of numbers.



Here are some more examples of counting in Korean.

0 영

1 일

10 십

11 열

16\* 십육

20 이십

25 이십오

30 삼십

40 사십

50 오십

60 육십

70 칠십

80 팔십

\*90 구십

100 백

101 백일

200 이백

999 구백구십구

1,001 천일

1,010 천십

1,100 천백

2,000 이천

5,555 오천오백오십오

7,777 칠천칠백칠십칠

8,099 팔천구십구

9,100 구천

Note that 십육 is pronounced as 십육

### Advanced Notes:

Not only is 16 (십육) pronounced as 십육 but any combination of a ten and six will be pronounced the same way. 26 will be pronounced 이십육 36 will be 삼십육 186 will be 백팔십육 and so on.

Notice how whenever the first digit is a 1, there is no 일 added to the beginning.

100 백

500 = 5 & 100 → 오백

1,000 천

2,000 = 2 & 1,000 → 이천

10,000 만

30,000 = 3 & 10,000 → 삼만

This chapter, as well as the next chapter, present numbers written phonetically in 한글. This is only to help explain how numbers work, and how they sound. In real Korean, numbers are written using Arabic numerals, like in English. However, I recommend writing out the numbers phonetically in this way for this chapter and the next chapter as practice.

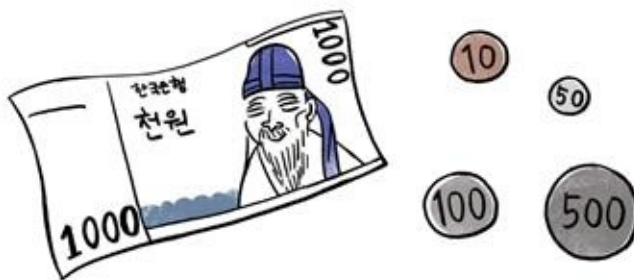
### Advanced Notes:

The largest single number unit we covered in this chapter is 10,000, but you can count higher than 99,999,999 in Korean. The next increment beyond 만 is a hundred million (100,000,000), and is called 억. This works in the same way as our previous units. Using this next unit enables us to count up to 999,999,999,999.

100,000,000 = 억

Although numbers these high may seem useless, 억 is actually used quite frequently. This is mainly due to how South Korea's currency works, as we'll learn next.

### 원 – the currency of Korea



The official currency of South Korea is the "Won" – 원.

In order to count 원 ("Won"), simply attach 원 to the end of a number.

10 Won 십원

100 Won 백원

500 Won 오백원

1,000 Won 천원

10,000 Won 만원

99,999 Won 구만구천백구십원

#### Culture Notes:

Exchange rates for Won can vary depending on the economy, so check with a bank before traveling to Korea to see how much money you will get when exchanging. At the time of writing this book, one US dollar is equivalent to around 1,000 Won. Be aware of the value of Won in order to budget well and avoid overpaying for things while in South Korea.

Now that we've learned how to count, let's go over the first conversation.

김영희: 이것 얼마니까?  
"How much is this?"

얼마 means "how much," so 얼마니까? means "how much is it?" Combining this with 이것 makes it more specific that you are referring to "this thing."

You can use this same construction to ask the price of anything you'd like.

얼마니까?  
"How much is it?"

커피 값 얼마니까?

"How much is a plane ticket?"

김영희: 비행기 티켓이 얼마입니까?

"How much are French fries?"

직원: 그쵸 삼만오천원입니다.

"That is 35,100 Won."

In the last chapter, we learned that the Topic Marker (은/는) can be used after a word to mean "as for." In this case, 그쵸 means "as for that (thing)."

Another way to translate this sentence would therefore be "As for that, it's 35,100 Won."

김영희: 여기 판원입니다.

"Here is 40,000 Won."

직원: 네여기 천백원입니다.

"Okay, here is 4,900 Won."

김영희: 감사합니다. 안녕히 계세요.

"Thank you. Goodbye."

Remember that saying 안녕히 계세요 to the employee means that the employee is staying, and the speaker is leaving.

## Conversation 2



김영희: 아, 저는 오늘기쁠다.

김철수: 왜 기쁠까? 뭘때문에 그렇게 기쁠까?

김영희: 저는 일이 있기 때문에 기쁠다. 그꺄때문에 돈 있습니다.

김철수: 저는 쫌다.

김영희: 왜 쫌까?

김철수: 저의 일을 쫌하기 때문입니다.

Let's continue by covering this second conversation.

김영희: 아, 저는 오늘기쁠다.

"Ah, I am happy today."

Although we'll go over the Topic Marker (은/는) in more detail later, I'd like to emphasize again that its meaning is similar to "as for."

Another way to translate this sentence would be "Ah, as for me, I am happy today."

김철수: 왜 기쁠까? 뭘때문에 그렇게 기쁠까?

"Why are you happy? What are you so happy because of?"

"Because"

Noun + 때문에/때문입니다

If you want to say "because of" in the middle of a sentence, take a noun and attach **때문에** after it.

저의 일 때문에 **쥌**다.  
"I am sad because of my work."

**췌** 때문에 **췌** 갑니다.  
"I am going to school because of homework."

Notice how the order of the sentence is reversed from how we would say the same thing in English – "Because of homework, I am going to school." In Korean, the cause comes before the reason.

If you want to say "it is because of" at the end of a sentence, take a noun and attach **때문**, followed by **입니다** (which comes from the verb **이다**).

저의 일 때문에 **췌** 있습니다.  
"I have money because of my work."

저의 일 **때문**입니다.  
"It is because of my work."

This form has a negative meaning if used after a person. Saying **때문에** after a person is a rude way to say he or she made a mistake.

김 씨 **때문**입니다!  
"It's because of Mr. Kim!"

This sentence would also feel like you are accusing Mr. Kim of something being his fault. Avoid using **때문** after a person.

#### Advanced Notes:

To express "because of" a person in a positive way, use **덕분** instead of **때문** – "thanks to."

김 씨 덕분에 뽐 있습니다.  
"I have money thanks to Mr. Kim."

김 씨 덕분입니다!  
"It is thanks to Mr. Kim!"

## The Adverb 그렇게

그렇게 is an adverb which means "so" (or "in that way"), and is attached before a verb. It's most often used this way in questions.

그렇게 재미있습니까?  
"Is it so fun?"

저도 그렇게 생각합니다.  
"I think so too."

왜 그렇게 행복습니까?  
"Why are you so happy?"

그렇게 맛있습니까?  
"Is it so delicious?"

그렇게 comes from the verb 그렇다, which means "to be so."

A common usage of the verb 그렇다 is for requesting confirmation – "is that so?"

그렇습니까?  
"Is that so?"

Although the literal meaning of 그렇다 is "to be so," a more natural sounding translation of the above sentence would be this:

그렇습니까?

"Really?"

그렇다 can also be used for confirming things to others – "that is so."

그렇습니다.

"That is so."

This would also be more naturally translated as "really."

그렇습니다.

"Really."

This chapter introduces two verbs which mean "to be happy" – 기쁘다 and 행복하다. Both are common and share the same meaning, so feel free to use either one.

김영희: 저는 일이 있기 때문에 기쁩니다. 그것때문에 돈 있습니다.

"I am happy because I have a job. Because of that I have money too."

"Because"

Verb Stem + 기 때문에/기 때문입니다

This same "because of" form also works with verbs.

If you want to say "because of" in the middle of a sentence, take a verb stem and attach 기 때문에 after it.

돈이 있기 때문에 기쁩니다.

"I am happy because I have money."

숙제 가기 때문에 책가 있습니다.

"I have homework because I go to school."

저는 미국 체하기 때문에 영어를 잘합니다.



**"Because I am an American I speak English well."**

**Advanced Notes:**

When the adverb **잘** comes before the verb **하다** (**잘하다**), it attaches directly without any space; this is an exception.

The above sentence would literally translate as "Because I am an American I do English well." However, it's not necessary to say "speak," because using the verb **하다** ("to do") following a language (Korean, English, etc.) implies that you mean "speak."

If you want to say "it is because of" at the end of a sentence, take a verb stem and attach **기 때문**, followed by **입니다**.

**차가 있기 때문입니다.**  
"It's because I have a car."

**너무 빨리 먹기 때문입니다.**  
"It's because you eat too fast."

**김철수: 저는 슬픔다.**  
"I am sad."

**김영희: 왜 슬픔까?**  
"Why are you sad?"

**김영희: 저의 일을 싫하기 때문입니다.**  
"Because I dislike my work."

**Practice**

**Write the following numbers phonetically in Korean:**

1. 15
2. 29

3. 81
4. 99
5. 101
6. 333
7. 500
8. 1,001
9. 9,000
10. 10,112
11. 50,500
12. 900,000
13. 1,000,000

Translate to Korean:

14. "I have 1,000 Won."
15. "How much is this cat?"
16. "I am happy because I have a house."
17. "I am happy because of my house."
18. "Is this homework so difficult?"

Translate to English:

19. 그것 얼마니까?
20. 저는 19,000원이 있습니다.
21. 책이 있기 때문에 좋다.
22. 오늘저의 책 때문에 좋다.

## 23. 얼마나 싸니까?

### New Phrases

얼마니까? - "How much does it cost?"

### New Vocabulary

영 - 0

일 - 1

이 - 2

삼 - 3

사 - 4

오 - 5

육 - 6

칠 - 7

팔 - 8

구 - 9

십 - 10

백 - 100

천 - 1,000

만 - 10,000

십만 - 100,000

백만 - 1,000,000

천만 - 10,000,000

억 - 100,000,000

원 - "Won" (Korean currency)

기쁘다 - "to be happy"

행복하다 - "to be happy"

슬프다 - "to be sad"

자연 - "nature"

자연스럽다 - "to be natural"

환하다 - "to be wonderful"

결혼 - "marriage"

결혼하다 - "to marry"  
무례하다 - "to be impolite"  
예의(가) 바른하다 - "to be polite"  
가격 "price," "cost"  
손님 - "guest," "customer"  
이웃 "neighbor"  
번호 "number (of something)"  
전화 - "telephone call"  
전화기 - "telephone"  
전화번호 "phone number"  
전화(를) 하다 - "to telephone," "to call"  
전화(를) 받다 - "to answer the phone"  
직원 - "employee"  
회사 "company"  
사장님 - "boss"  
대통령 "the President"  
정부 "government"  
경제 - "economics"  
정치 - "politics"  
자유 "freedom"  
사회 "society"  
문화 - "culture"  
표 "ticket"  
항공표 "plane ticket"  
감자튀김 - "French fries"  
숫자 "an integer," "a number"  
비밀 "a secret"  
비밀번호 "password"  
그렇게 - "so," "in that way" (adverb)  
너무 "too (much)," "overly" (adverb)

## Chapter 13: More Numbers

Last chapter we focused on Sino-Korean numbers (we'll cover what this means), and this chapter we'll introduce Pure Korean numbers, as well as how and when to use them. We'll also learn what the distinction between Sino-Korean numbers and Pure Korean numbers is, and why it's important to know both of them.

### Conversation



A: 뭣에 뭘까?

B: 세 뭣 뭘다. 저와 김 씨와 제 툰도 뭘다.

A: 그 툰는 제주도에서 여기까지 뭘까?

B: 네 맞습니다. 그리고 그분의 고양이도 데리고 뭘다.

A: 고양이라고요? 뭣째를 데리고 뭘까?

B: 한 뻘지만, 그 한 뻘가 췌다 더 뭘다.

A: 아이고! 췌고양이가 맞습니까?

### Pure Korean and Sino Korean Numbers

In the last chapter, we learned how to count in Korean using Sino Korean numbers. "Sino" is a word that means "China," and Sino Korean

numbers are numbers that originated from the Chinese language. Some things, such as money (원) are counted using Sino Korean numbers, as we learned in the last chapter, but other things are counted using Pure Korean numbers.

Pure Korean numbers are numbers which did not originate from China, but developed within Korea. You will need to become familiar with both Sino and Pure Korean numbers in order to properly speak Korean.

But don't worry! In some ways, Pure Korean numbers are simpler than Sino Korean numbers. Pure Korean numbers have different uses than Sino Korean numbers. We'll go over these in a bit.

If you're simply counting numbers on their own, such as when teaching someone how to count to ten in Korean, and not counting anything, it's much more common and preferred to use Sino Korean numbers.

This chapter will focus on Pure Korean numbers and how to use them. We'll also learn how to count things besides only 원.

Let's go over the Pure Korean numbers.

- 1 하나
- 2 둘
- 3 셋
- 4 넷
- 5 다섯
- 6 여섯
- 7 일곱
- 8 여덟
- 9 아홉
- 10 열
- 20 물
- 30 서른

## 40 ~~년~~

Remember from the rules of reading 한글 that ~~여덟~~ is pronounced as 여덜.

Fortunately, counting Pure Korean numbers is done in the same way as Sino Korean numbers. However, Pure Korean has special numbers for 20, 30, and 40.

### Advanced Notes:

Also notice the unique spacing used with Pure Korean numbers and also with counters. It's not required that you know exactly how to space words in Korean, as many Koreans are unaware of the rules as well; improper spacing will not severely impact your Korean, but proper spacing does show a stronger understanding of the written language.

11 = 10 & 1 열하나

19 = 10 & 9 열아홉

21 = 20 & 1 스물하나

39 = 30 & 9 서른아홉

41 = 40 & 1 ~~년~~하나

This is in contrast to Sino Korean numbers, such as the following example:

21 = 2 & 10 & 1 이십일

Once we reach 50, things go back to normal.

50 = 5 & 10 오십

65 = 6 & 10 & 5 육십오

100 백

See what happened? Once we pass 49, we can simply switch to Sino Korean again. This is because many of the larger Pure Korean numbers are now no longer used anymore (such as 100 and above).

In fact, if you want to, feel free to switch back to Sino Korean once you've hit 40, and it'll still be acceptable.

### Advanced Notes:

There are actually Pure Korean numbers that go up extremely high, though these are no longer in use and most people do not know them. However, there are also numbers for 50, 60, 70, 80, and 90 which are still in use today; Koreans might not use these numbers often, but it would be useful to know them, especially if you have plans to visit Korea in the future. Here are those numbers:

50 → 쉰  
60 → 예순  
70 → 일흔  
80 → 여든  
90 → 아흔

And here are some examples of numbers within this range.

51 → 쉰하나  
64 → 예순넷  
72 → 일흔둘  
85 → 여든다섯  
99 → 아흔아홉

100 → 백

Regardless of how high you wish to count in Pure Korean numbers, you will still switch back to Sino Korean once you hit 100, as Pure Korean numbers for 100 and above are no longer used in Korea.

### Counting and Counters

Now that we've learned how to count with both Sino Korean and Pure Korean numbers, let's see what we can do with them.

In the last chapter we learned how to use Sino Korean numbers to count South Korean Won.

1,000 Won 천원

And of course, we can use Sino Korean numbers to say numbers on



their own.

## 112 백십

But what if you want to count other things, like people?

You will need to learn what is called counters in order to do this. A counter is a word that is only used when counting something. In order to say "1 person," you will need to know the person counter, and in order to say "1 animal" you will need to know the animal counter. English actually also has a similar concept.

"a swarm of bees" / "a pack of wolves" / "a herd of buffalo" / "a flock of geese"

But imagine having to learn a different counter, such as "swarm" or "pack," for every different type of animal. In Korean, things are much less complicated.

What you are counting will determine whether you will need to use Sino Korean or Pure Korean. For 원, use Sino Korean as we learned in the last chapter.

Let's go over some things that are counted using Pure Korean numbers.

Animals are counted using **마**.

소 아홉마 "nine cows"

물기 일곱마 "seven fish"

Notice how we name the animal first, followed by the Korean number, and then the counter. This is how all counting works in Korean – first specify what you are counting (here 소 or 물기), followed by the

number, and then the counter.

여섯 개 "six dogs"

고양이 한 마리 "one cat"

For this example, 하나 becomes 한. This is because the first four numbers (1, 2, 3, and 4) in Pure Korean are special, and change form when used before a counter.

1 하나 → 한

2 둘 → 두

3 셋 → 세

4 넷 → 네

In addition, the number 20 also changes when used directly before a counter.

20 말 → 마리

한 마리 "one dog"

두 마리 "two mice"

셋 마리 "three snakes"

넷 마리 "four lions"

Let's look at a few examples.

저는 고양이 한 마리가 있습니다.  
"I have one cat."

여기에 여섯 마리가 있습니다.  
"Here are six snakes."

Remember that although we're using counters, you will still need to attach whatever marker you would normally use – above, we're attaching the Subject Marker.

백 마리를 먹 싶습니다.  
"I want to eat 100 chickens."

And here we attached the Object Marker. Remember that for any number 50 or above (even 40 or above if you'd like), feel free to switch to Sino Korean numbers (here 백마).

People are counted using 명

셋 명 3 people"

여섯 명 6 people"

만 명 10,000 people"

Or, you can simply use a Pure Korean number with the counter 명 by itself, and it will still have the same meaning.

세 명 3 people"

오십 명 50 people"

저는 (다섯을) 초대합니다.  
"I'm inviting 5 people."

Items (including things for which there is no specific counter) are counted using 개

의자 일곱 개 7 chairs"

펜 열 개 12 pens"

상자 세 개 3 boxes"

저는 컴퓨터 한 대 있습니다.  
"I have one computer."

의자 두 개를 원합니다.  
"I want two chairs."

Age is counted using 살.

세 살 "3 years old"

двадцать лет "20 years old"

저는二十七살입니다.  
"I am 27 years old."

김 선생님은 서른두살입니다.  
"Mr. Kim is 32 years old."

### Advanced Notes:

살 is a bit of an exception; it should only be used with Pure Korean numbers. However, this doesn't mean that you need to learn all numbers to 100 in order to say a person's age; instead, once you are no longer able to use Pure Korean numbers (above 40), it's more common to use the counter 세 instead of 살.

While 살 is used with Pure Korean numbers, 세 is used with Sino Korean numbers.

30 years old → 서른살

50 years old → 오십세

73 years old → 칠십세

82 years old → 팔십세

몇 can be used before a counter to mean "how many," and is used for

asking about quantities.

몇몇이니까?

"How many people?"

몇명이 있습니까?

"How many people are there?"

닭몇마리를 먹고 싶습니까?

"How many chickens do you want to eat?"

김 씨는 몇살입니까?

"As for Mr. Kim, how old is he?"

몇살입니까?

"How old are you?"

Asking someone his or her age with 몇살입니까? is only acceptable to people who are younger than yourself. In Chapter 15 we will cover a more polite, standard way of asking a person's age.

#### Advanced Notes:

몇 can also mean "some" or "a few." Whether it is being used to mean "how many," "some," or "a few," will be clear from the context. It is used in the same way, before a counter.

몇명이 옵니까?

"How many people are coming?"

몇명이 옵니다.

"A few people are coming."

Measuring things is done using Sino Korean numbers. Like most countries besides the United States, Korea uses the metric system.

미터 "meter"

→ 이 미터 "2 meters"

센티미터 "centimeter"

→ 십센티미터 "10 centimeters"

밀리미터 "millimeter"

→ 육밀리미터 "6 millimeters"

킬로그램 "kilo(gram)"

→ 이백 쉰 200 kilos"

그램 gram"

→ 백오십그램 150 grams"

리터 "liter"

→ 팔리터 "8 liters"

도 "degrees"

→ 사십도 "40 degrees"

Note that Korea uses Celsius for measuring degrees.

Although Korea uses the metric system, if you're in the United States, you can use your local measurement system in Korean as well.

갤런 gallon"

→ 삼 갤 3 gallons"

마일 "mile"

→ 백 마일 "100 miles"

톤 ton"

→ 오천톤 5,000 tons"

Want to Have

몇개를 가지고 싶습니까?

"How many do you want to have?"

The above sentence uses the verb 가지다 instead of 원하다. In fact, using the verb 원하다 to express that you want something (which we've used up until this point) is actually a bit direct – "I want." A more natural way to say this is by using the verb 가지다, which means "to have (on your person)" or "to hold." 가지고 싶다 therefore means "to want to have." Also note that 싶다 is the original verb where 싶습니다 comes from.

저는 새로운 휴대폰을 가지고 싶습니다.

"I want to have a new cell phone."

However, do not use the verb 가지다 by itself to say that you have something on your person yet, as it must be conjugated another way that this book does not cover. Continue to use the verb 있다 to express that you have something.

#### Advanced Notes:

You may also come across the verb 꺾. Both 꺾 and 가지다 have the same meaning, and are interchangeable. 꺾 is an abbreviation of 가지다.

Flat items, such as paper items and shirts, are counted using 장

종이 한 장

"1 sheet of paper"

종이 백 장

"100 sheets of paper"

셔츠 열두 장

"12 shirts"

Books are counted using 권

책한 권  
"1 book"

책서른권  
"30 books"

As I mentioned for the counter **명** if it's already clear what you are referring to, feel free to leave off the first noun (what you are counting), and simply say the Pure Korean number with its counter.

거기에 **사람명**에 갑니까?  
"How many people are going there?"

세 **명** 갑니다.  
"3 people are going."

It would be fine to say **사람세 명** 갑니다, though it's unnecessary since it's already clear that you're talking about people simply by using the **명** counter.

### Advanced Notes:

Let's go over some more counters. This is not a complete list of every counter, but includes most of the common ones you will find in Korean.

Remember that saying what you are counting before the number and counter is optional.

**벌**clothing counter  
→ (양복한 벌1 suit"

**때**word counter  
→ (말한 때1 word"

**병**bottle counter  
→ (맥주) 열두병12 bottles of beer"  
→ (물세 병3 bottles of water"

**루** long, thin item counter  
→ (필세 루 "3 pencils"



→ (칼한 켄 "1 knife"

켄pairs (of shoes or socks) counter

→ (양말두켄2 pairs of socks"

→ (신발한 켄1 pair of shoes"

피pizza counter

→ (피셋판25 pizzas"

첼 plate counter

→ (볶을) 일곱첼 "7 plates of fried rice"

컵cup counter

→ (물한 컵1 cup of water"

그루 tree counter

→ (나무한 그루 "1 tree"

대appliance or car counter

→ (자동차) 두대2 cars"

→ (컴퓨터) 세 대3 computers"

조각piece counter

→ (빵한 조각1 piece of bread"

→ (피세 조각3 pieces of pizza"

번 times counter

→ 한 번 "once," "one time"

→ 두번 "twice," "two times"

저는 이 음식 백 번 더 먹고 싶습니다.

"I want to eat this food 100 more times."

Now that we've got everything about numbers cleared up, let's go over the conversation.

A: 몇명이 옵니까?

"How many people are coming?"

Although it would be grammatically fine to say **몇명이 옵니까?** here, it isn't necessary because the counter **명** is only used in reference to people. Unless it were vague that you were referring to people (such as in the middle of talking about something completely different), it's fine to

leave off **참**

B: 세 명이 옵니다. 저와 김 씨와 제 친구도 옵니다.

"3 people are coming. Me and Mr. Kim and my friend are coming too."

A: 그 친구는 제주도에서 여기까지 옵니까?

"Is that friend coming from Jeju Island to here?"

A에서 B까지

This is how to say "from A to B" when talking about locations. **에서** here means "from," and **까지** means "until" or "(up) to."

저는 저의 집에서 김 씨의 집까지 걸어갑니다.

"I'm walking from my house to Mr. Kim's house."

김 씨는 거기에서 여기까지 옵니다.

"Mr. Kim is coming from there to here."

학교에서 병원까지 갑니다.

"I'm going from the school to the hospital."

### Advanced Notes:

In other situations, **에서** can also mean "at" or "in," but we'll go over these situations in Chapter 15. For now, just remember that **에서** means "from a location." Note that this is not how you would say "from person A to person B," but that this is only used for locations. We'll go over how to say "from person A to person B" in Chapter 17.

### Culture Notes:



To many in Korea, 제주도 is known as the Hawaii of South Korea, and

rightly so. Located between South Korea and Japan, 제주도 has warmer weather year-round; in winter it rarely drops below freezing. 제주도 is home to many popular nature-related attractions, such as waterfalls, underground lava tubes, and Mt. Halla (한라산)

B: 네 맞습니다. 그리고 그분의 고양이도 데리고 옵니다.  
"Yes, that's right. And he is bringing his cat too."

맞다 means "to be correct," but can also translate as "to be right."

#### Advanced Notes:

맞다, when meaning "to be correct," conjugates to an adjective as 맞는 ("correct").

그분 – "he," "she," "that person"

그분 literally means "that person" (분 is a special, polite word that means "person"). You can use it to refer to anyone with whom you are not acquainted, or for anyone who you do not know the name of. Remember that it means "that person," so you would not use this if the person is standing in the same room as you, just as you would not call someone "that person" in English if he or she is present.

You can use 그분 for both males and females, making it a convenient way to say "he" or "she" in Korean.

Nevertheless, it's best to refer to people by their names when possible.

그분이 좋은 사람입니다.  
"He/she is a good person."

그분이 누구입니까?  
"Who is he/she?"

그분은 저의 친구입니다.  
"As for him/her, he/she is my friend."

그분을 만나고 싶습니다.  
"I want to meet him/her."

데리다 and 가지다

These two verbs both mean "to take," but are used a bit differently. 데리다 is used for people or animals (never for things), while 가지다 is used exclusively for things (never for people).

Combined with the verbs 가다 and 오다 (using 고), these verbs mean "to take" and "to bring."

저는 파티에 김 씨를 데리고 갑니다.  
"I'm taking Mr. Kim to the party."

그분은 파티에 김 씨를 데리고 옵니다.  
"He's bringing Mr. Kim to the party."

저는 파티에 김치를 가지고 갑니다.  
"I'm taking kimchi to the party."

그분은 파티에 김치를 가지고 옵니다.  
"He's bringing kimchi to the party."

### Advanced Notes:

Alternate versions of 데리고 가다 and 데리고 오다 are 데려가다 and 데려오다. Alternate versions of 가지고 가다 and 가지고 오다 are 가져가다 and 가져오다. These can be used in the same way as the versions taught above, and have the same meaning.

A: 고양이라고요? 몇마리를 데리고 옵니까?  
"Did you say cat? How many is he bringing?"

(이)라고요?

Use this after a word to confirm whether or not someone said something. An equivalent expression in English would be "Did you say...?"

Use 이라고요 if the word ends in a consonant, or use 라고요 if the word ends in a vowel.

저라고요?  
"Did you say me?"

선생님이라고요?  
"Did you say the teacher?"

치작고요?  
"Did you say cheese?"

This form can also be used in statements to repeat something that someone said.

김 선생님이라고요.  
"He said Mr. Kim."

사과 두개라고요.  
"I said 2 apples."

B: 한 마리지만, 그 한 마리가 개보다 더 큼다.  
"It's one cat, but that one cat is bigger than a dog."

Noun + 보다 (더)

Saying that something is more (adjective) than something else is simple.

Take a noun and attach 보다 to the end. You can also optionally add 더

after as an adverb, which means "more."

이것이 그것보다 어렵습니다.  
"This is more difficult than that."

에다가 우유보다 더 맛있습니다.  
"Soda is more delicious than milk."

소고기가 돼지고기보다 비쌉니다.  
"Beef is more expensive than pork."

You can also use 더 in other situations.

더 먹고 싶습니다.  
"I want to eat more."

더 주세요.  
"Please give me more."

그분은 저보다 키가 더 큼니다.  
"He is taller than me."

In the example above, 키가) 큼 means "to be tall (height)," but literally means that a person's 키("height," "stature") is 큼 ("big"). Because 더 is an adverb it must modify a verb, so in 키가) 큼 the verb is the descriptive verb 큼; therefore 더 should appear before 큼 and not before 키

더 can also be used to add the meaning of "er" to any descriptive verb.

더 큰케이크를 원합니다.  
"I want a bigger cake."

더 좋은 생각

"a better idea"

더 빠른 차  
"a faster car"

더 예쁜 여자  
"a prettier girl"

더 똑똑한 사람  
"a smarter person"

A: 아이고! 정말 고양이가 맞습니까?  
"Oh my! Is it really a cat?"

Noun + (이/가) 맞다

Here's how to ask if something is correct, or to claim that it is. Use the verb **맞다** after a noun with a Subject Marker.

제가 미국 사람 맞습니다.  
"It's correct that I'm an American."

그게 카메라 맞습니까?  
"Is that really a camera?"

그분이 선생님 맞습니까?  
"Is he really a teacher?"

### Advanced Notes:

In this chapter we learned how to use counters, and how to use markers appropriately with them. Take the following sentence for example:

사과 몇 개를 먹고 싶습니까?  
"How many apples do you want to eat?"

Notice how we used the Object Marker after **개** and not after **사과**. In fact, all of our examples in

this chapter use markers after counters in this way. But it doesn't have to be this way. The above sentence could just as well be this:

사과를 몇<sup>개</sup>원 싶습니까?

"How many apples do you want to eat?"

To keep things simple, this chapters' examples only show using markers after counters – but feel free to use markers directly after what it is that you're counting. There is no significant difference, and both ways are correct.

## Practice

Write the following numbers in Pure Korean:

- a. 1
- b. 2
- c. 3
- d. 4
- e. 5
- f. 6
- g. 7
- h. 8
- i. 9
- j. 10
- k. 20
- l. 22
- m. 27
- n. 30

Translate to Korean:

1. "I want to see 10 monkeys."
2. "Please give me 3 notebooks."
3. "There are 2 people in my house."



4. "He is 30 years old."
5. "How old is he?"
6. "I'm walking from home to the store."
7. "Is that really a cake?"
8. "I will bring my friend to school."
9. "Did you say Korean food?"
10. "This is better than that."

Translate to English:

11. 소 두마리를 먹고 싶습니다.
12. 저한테 빵을 줘다.
13. 저는 열여덟살입니다.
14. 서점에서 책을 구입합니다.
15. 고양이는 몇마리가 있습니까?
16. 그책 정가보다 싸게 구입합니다.
17. 제 친구 김 선생님의 집을 줘다.
18. 빵 한 판 주세요.
19. 그분은 선물 가지고 갑니다.

20. 선풍라고요?

21. 저는 이 고양이가 저 고양이보다 더 귀엽기 때문에 이 고양이를 더 좋아합니다.

### New Phrases

아이고! - "Oh my!"

### New Vocabulary

하나 - 1

한 - 1 (adjective)

둘 2

두 2 (adjective)

셋 3

세 - 3 (adjective)

넷 4

네 4 (adjective)

다섯 5

여섯 6

일곱 7

여덟 8

아홉 9

열 10

물 20

쭉 20 (adjective)

서른 30

마흔 40

마리 - animal counter

명 person counter

개 item counter

살 - age counter

장 flat item counter

권 book counter

몇 "how many" (adjective)

소 - "cow"

책 "study" notebook"

상 "box"

맥주 - "beer"

소주 - "(Korean) alcohol"

나무 "tree," "wood"

꽃 "flower"

장미 - "rose"

하늘 "sky"

땅 "earth," "dirt"

바람 "wind"

불 "fire"

세계 - "world"

지구 - "the Earth"

우주 - "universe"

해 "the sun"

잔디 "grass," "lawn"

숲 "forest"

종이 - "paper"

물고기 - "(alive) fish"

고기 - "meat"

쇠고기 - "beef"

돼지고기 - "pork"

돌 "stone"

가지다 - "to hold," "to have (on your person)"

가게 - "store"

운전(을) 하다 - "to drive"

운동(을) 하다 - "to exercise"

똑똑하다 - "to be smart"

쥐 "mouse," "rat"

칼 "knife," "blade"

검 "sword"

컵 "cup"

사자 "lion"  
닭 "chicken"  
게 - "crab"  
사과 - "apple"  
당근 "carrot"  
똥 "poop"  
초대를 하다 - "to invite"  
양복 "a suit"  
신발 "shoes"  
양말 "socks"  
맞다 - "to be correct"  
틀리다 - "to be incorrect"  
에서 - "from," "at," "in" (particle)  
만나다 - "to meet"  
제주도 - "Jeju Island"  
그분 - "him," "her," "that person"  
가지고 오다 - "to bring (something here)"  
가지고 가다 - "to take (something somewhere else)"  
데리고 오다 - "to take (someone here)"  
데리고 가다 - "to take (someone somewhere else)"  
파티 "party"  
보다 (더) - "more than"  
키가 크다 - "to be tall (height)"  
키가 작다 - "to be short (height)"  
키 "height," "stature"  
불편하다 - "to be uncomfortable"  
편하다 - "to be comfortable"  
필요하다 - "to be necessary"  
갤런 "gallon"  
마일 - "mile"  
톤 "ton"  
미터 - "meter"  
센티미터 - "centimeter"  
밀리미터 - "millimeter"

킬로그램 - "kilo(gram)"

그램 "gram"

리터 - "liter"

밀리리터 - "millileter"

도 - "degrees"

## Chapter 14: Negative Sentences

In this chapter we'll learn how to make negative sentences – "I do not want to eat it," as opposed to "I want to eat it." We'll also learn about negative verbs.

### Conversation



양태용: 오늘 저와 함께 원에 갑니까?  
최소영: 아니요. 안 갑니다.  
양태용: 왜 가지 않습니까?  
최소영: 시편 없기 때문에 갈수 없습니다.

### Making Verbs Negative

Up until now we've only worked with verbs that are positive – what I mean by positive is they've all been about things you do, as opposed to things that you don't do. For example:

저는 갑니다.  
"I'm going."

저는 미국 사람입니다.  
"I'm an American."

This chapter will cover how to make negative sentences.

저는 안 갑니다.  
"I'm not going."

저는 미국 사람이 아닙니다.  
"I'm not an American."

Before we can learn how these work, we need to learn a little bit more about how the Korean language works. In English, to make a verb negative in the present tense, you can simply add "not."

"I am a student." → "I am not a student."

"I'm going." → "I'm not going."

Korean has a similar way to make verbs negative too, but some verbs act differently than others.

Verb Stem + 지 않다

You can use this form to turn any verb into a negative.

Take the verb stem and attach 지, followed by the verb 않다 conjugated; in present tense, this would become 않습니다.

공부하다  
→ 공부하지 않다

가다  
→ 가지 않다

딱

→ **적** 않다

**공부**합니다.

"I'm studying"

**공부**지 않습니다.

"I'm not studying."

**학교** 갑니다.

"I'm going to school."

**학교** 가지 않습니다.

"I'm not going to school."

**김치**를 **먹**습니다.

"I'm eating kimchi."

**김치**를 **적** 않습니다.

"I'm not eating kimchi."

When changing a descriptive verb into an adjective, using this negative form, **지 않다** will become **지 않은**.

**덥**지 않은 **날**

"weather that isn't hot"

**피곤**지 않은 **사람**

"a person who isn't tired"

**높**지 않은 **산**

"a mountain that isn't tall"



## 안 + Verb

Some verbs are a bit special, and have a second, extra way of making them negative.

For these type of verbs, all you need to do is add 안 before them to make them negative.

가다

→ 안 가다

딱

→ 안 딱

갑니다.

"I'm going"

안 갑니다.

"I'm not going."

김치를 씹니다.

"I'm eating kimchi."

김치를 안 씹니다.

"I'm not eating kimchi."

Seems simple, right? But how do you know when you should use 안 before the verb, or 지 않다 after it? Here's the answer:

## Sino Korean Verbs and Pure Korean Verbs

In the last two chapters we learned about Sino Korean numbers and Pure Korean numbers. But there's more! Some verbs in Korean originally came from Chinese as well, such as 공부하다 ("to study"), and

many other verbs (but not all) that end in 하다. Other verbs in Korean did not come from Chinese, but originated in Korea, such as 가다 ("to go").

Verbs that came from the Chinese language are known as Sino Korean verbs, and verbs that did not come from Chinese are Pure Korean verbs.

Why is this important to know? If you know whether a verb is Sino Korean or Pure Korean, you can know whether you can use 안 or 지 않다 to make it negative.

All Pure Korean verbs can use both of the above two methods.

안 가다 "to not go"

저는 안 갑니다.  
"I'm not going."

가지 않다 "to not go"

저는 가지 않습니다.  
"I'm not going."

안 뵙다 "to not eat"

저는 안 씹니다.  
"I'm not eating it."

먹지 않다 "to not eat"

저는 먹지 않습니다.  
"I'm not eating it."

These above two methods are identical. Feel free to use whichever you feel more comfortable with.

All Sino Korean verbs can only use **지 않다**. You cannot use **안** with a Sino Korean verb.

**공부하지 않다** "to not study"

저는 **공부하지** 않습니다.  
"I'm not studying."

**안 공부하다** would be incorrect, since **공부하다** is a Sino Korean verb.

**수영하지 않다** "to not swim"

저는 **수영하지** 않습니다.  
"I'm not swimming."

**안 수영하다** would also be incorrect because it is a Sino Korean verb.

### Advanced Notes:

The difference between using **안** and using **지 않다** is that **지 않다** is used a tiny bit more in formal situations or when trying to be polite. This difference is really small, and will not matter at all, but there is a difference.

But then how can you tell which verbs are Sino Korean and which verbs are Pure Korean just by looking at them? The short answer is you can't, but the slightly longer answer is you can, sometimes.

Any verb with only two syllables will be a Pure Korean verb 100% of the time (well, except for only one verb, which I'll talk about in a moment). This includes verbs such as **가다**, **오다**, **땀**, **땀**, and any other two syllable verb we've learned so far. There are many of these verbs, so knowing this tip alone should be useful.

There is only one exception to this rule – the verb 하다. Except when 하다 is all on its own in a sentence, you'll have to rely on other methods to figure out whether the verb is acting as a Sino Korean verb or as a Pure Korean verb.

안 하다 is okay (하다 is on its own), as is 하지 않다, but 안 공부하다 is incorrect (공부하다 is a Sino Korean verb).

안 섰다 is okay (섰다 is a Pure Korean verb), and 섰지 않다 is also okay.

### Advanced Notes:

All verbs in this book containing 하다 that are listed with an Object Marker before them can also be used with both 안 and 지 않다. This is because these verbs are a combination of a noun and the verb 하다, and can be separated into two pieces as such.

Remember that 안 will still come directly before the verb itself, just as usual. Here are some example conjugations.

공부를) 하다 "to study"

공부하지 않다 "to not study"

\*공부를 안 하다 "to not study"

안 공부하다 would still be incorrect, for the same reasons as explained above.

Just to reiterate once more, not all verbs containing 하다 can be separated in this way, such as 섰하다 which is mentioned above. Be certain the verb can be separated in this way before using 안 before 하다.

However, if the verb has more than two syllables, the only way to tell whether it is Sino Korean or Pure Korean is through learning how each verb is used in real conversation. If you notice a certain longer verb being used with 안, then you can know for the future that it's a Pure Korean verb.

If you have access to a dictionary (physical or online), then here's another trick. Check if the verb has any Chinese characters listed next

to it. If it does, then it's a Sino Korean verb. If it doesn't, then it's a Pure Korean verb.

But when all else fails, use **지 않다**. Every verb can become negative using the **지 않다** form, so this is a safe bet when you're not sure whether a verb is Sino Korean or Pure Korean.

### Advanced Notes:

Using a dictionary to check for Chinese characters will let you know whether a verb is Sino Korean or Pure Korean almost every single time, but as languages go there will always be exceptions here and there. An example is the common verb **사랑하다** ("to love"), which is Sino Korean but will not have Chinese characters next to its listing in a dictionary because its origin in the Chinese language is not certain.

### Already Negative Verbs

Korean is a bit unique in another way from English. Saying "I know" and "I don't know" in English uses the same verb – "to know." However there are some cases in Korean where a separate verb exists that can be used instead.

Take the verb **알** which means "to know."

저는 **알**다.  
"I know."

Since this verb (**알**) only has two syllables, we can know for sure that it is a Pure Korean verb, and should therefore be able to become negative with either **안** or **지 않다**.

But there's actually already a negative verb for **알** that exists in Korean – **모**다, which means "to not know."

Instead of using **안 알** or **알지 않다**, you would use **모**다.

저는 **모**다.

"I don't know."

김 선생님을 뵈니까?  
"You don't know Mr. Kim?"

Another common verb which has a negative version already in Korean is 있다 ("to exist"). Its opposite is 없다 ("to not exist").

저는 돈 있습니다.  
"I have money."

저는 돈 없습니다.  
"I don't have money."

철수 씨가 지금 집에 없습니다.  
"Chul-soo is not at home now."

이 음식이 맛 없습니다.  
"This food is not delicious."

재미없습니다.  
"It's not entertaining."

When used as an adjective, 없다 becomes 없는.

맛없는 음식  
"food that doesn't taste good"

재미없는 이야기  
"a story that's not entertaining"

### Advanced Notes:

For verbs that contain 없다 and 있다, the Subject Marker is optional, as indicated by being surrounded in parentheses. However, these types of verbs are most often used without the Subject Marker. Instead of 재미(가) 있다, it's more common to see 재미있다, and instead of 재미(없)다,

없다, it's more common to see **없다**.

## 이다 and 아니다



Let's go over another useful negative verb.

**아니다** ("to not be") is the opposite of **이다** ("to be").

**아니다** is used slightly differently than **이다**, in that when you use **아니다** you must mark what it is that you aren't (or what isn't) by using the Subject Marker.

저는 미국 **입니다**.

"I'm an American."

저는 미국 **아닙니다**.

"I'm not an American."

그것은 고양이**입니다**.

"As for that, it is a cat."

그것은 고양이**가 아닙니다**.

"As for that, it is not a cat."

### Advanced Notes:

Even for verbs that already have negatives such as **없다**, **있다**, and **이다** feel free to use **지 않다** instead if you are unable to remember their negative forms. This is why I recommend falling back on **지 않다** if you're not sure. Of course, if you know the negative form of the verb, it's much preferred to use it instead.

### Advanced Notes:

There are also a small number of Sino Korean verbs that can use **안** before them as if they were Pure Korean verbs, but they are the exception and not the norm. One common example is **통다** ("to go through").

Now that we can make verbs negative, let's go over the conversation.

양태용: 오늘 저와 함께 원에 갑니까?  
"Are you going to the park with me today too?"

Noun + 와/과 함께

Saying "together with" is simple.

Take a noun and attach 와/과 followed by 함께.

저와 함께 집으로 가고 싶습니까?  
"Do you want to walk home together with me?"

김 씨와 함께 있습니까?  
"Are you together with Mr. Kim?"

Although 오늘 means "also today" or "today too," in this context it translates much better as "today again."

#### Advanced Notes:

In the above form, 함께 is actually optional, but using it gives a stronger meaning of "together."  
Using 와/과 on its own after a noun will mean simply "with."

저와 가고 싶습니까?  
"Do you want to go with me?"

저는 김 선생님과 있습니다.  
"I am with Mr. Kim."

최소영: 아니요. 안 갑니다.  
"No. I'm not going."

양태용: 왜 가지 않습니까?  
"Why aren't you going?"



Remember that since 가다 is a Pure Korean verb, it can become negative by either adding 안 before it, or by adding 지 않다 after it.

최소영: 시편 없기 때문에 갈수 없습니다.  
"I'm not going because I don't have time."

### Can and Can't Verb Stem + (을/ㄹ) 수 있다/없다

To say can or can't, take the verb stem and attach 을 if it ends in a consonant, or ㄹ if it ends in a vowel. Then add 수. Finally, use 있다 if you want to say "can," or use 없다 if you want to say "can't."

저는 그걸 먹을 수 있습니다.  
"I can eat that."

저는 그걸 먹을 수 없습니다.  
"I can't eat that."

그분은 뽕을 뿔 수 있습니다.  
"He/she can sing."

그분은 뽕을 뿔 수 없습니다.  
"He/she can't sing."

주제를 이해할 수 있습니다.  
"I can understand the topic."

주제를 이해할 수 없습니다.  
"I can't understand the topic."

저도 갈수 있습니다.  
"I can go too."

저도 갈 수 없습니다.  
"I can't go either."

### Advanced Notes:

It's also common for 수 to be followed by a marker, such as the Subject Marker (가) or Topic Marker (는). Although the meaning will stay the same, doing so will slightly alter the nuance of the sentence. We'll learn more about how these markers can affect the nuance of a sentence in the next chapter.

In negative sentences, 도 can also translate to "either."

저도 이해할 수 없습니다.  
"I can't understand it either."

저도 쇠기를 먹을 수 없습니다.  
"I can't eat beef either."

### Advanced Notes:

Here's an extra trick. If you know that a verb is a Pure Korean verb, there is a much easier way to say "can't" than the above method. Instead, attach 못 before the verb, then conjugate it normally. As with 안, this does not work for Sino Korean verbs.

저는 갈 수 없습니다.  
"I can't go."

저는 못 갑니다.  
"I can't go."

먹을 수 없습니다.  
"I can't eat it."

못 먹습니다.  
"I can't eat it."

그분도 할 수 없습니다.  
"He can't do it either."

그분도 못 합니다.  
"He can't do it either."

When 못 comes before the verb 하다, it attaches directly without any space; this is an exception. However, you will still need to use the above form like normal if you want to say "can."

저는 갈 수 있습니다.  
"I can go."

Using the 수 없다 form is a tiny bit more formal than using 못 but feel free to use either one. Remember that using 못 and using 안 have different meanings – while 못 is used to mean "can't" (unable to), 안 means "doesn't" (maybe can, but does not).

Let's look at an example with the verb 이해하다 ("to understand"). Using 이해하다 안 하다 would be incorrect, as using 안 means that you are not doing something on your own free will – instead, this verb would need to be either 이해하다 못하다, or 이해하다 할 수 없다.

### Culture Notes:

노래방 ("song room") and PC방 ("personal computer room") are popular places for Koreans, both young and old, to meet with each other.

A 노래방 is a private room for karaoke with friends and family. You are not expected to sing well, so relax and enjoy the time. If you are able to learn and sing a song in Korean at a 노래방 your experience will even be more memorable.

A typical PC방 will contain several dozens of high-end computers, as well as pre-installed popular games. Instead of owning a powerful gaming computer at home, most Koreans will simply spend money in a PC방 when they want to play games, which charge by the hour and are quite inexpensive.

### Practice

Translate to Korean:

1. "I'm not going to school today." (Using 안)
2. "He is not going to the hospital." (Using 지 않다)
3. "You're not coming to my house?" (Using 안)

4. "He is not at school." (Using 없다)

5. "I do not know him."

6. "I can swim quickly."

7. "Do you want to go together with me to the party?"

8. "I am not a Korean."

Translate to English:

9. 왜 뽀빠에 안 갑니까?

10. 장미꽃을 하지 않습니까?

11. 저는 뽀빠 가고 싶지 않습니다.

12. 저는 소고기를 싫하기 때문에 뽀빠 싶지 않습니다.

13. 영희 씨를 뽀빠?

14. 아니요. 저는 영희 씨를 뽀빠다.

15. 저는 영국 뽀빠 아닙니다.

16. 저는 뽀빠 없기 때문에 영희 씨와 함께 놀이 뽀빠 갈수 없습니다.

### New Vocabulary

뽀빠 - "song"

루다 - "to sing"

뽀빠(를) 루다 - "to sing a song"

이<sup>애</sup> - "story"  
이<sup>애</sup>(를) 하<sup>다</sup> - "to chat," "to gossip"  
외<sup>워</sup> - "to memorize"  
기<sup>억</sup>(을) 하<sup>다</sup> - "to remember"  
원 - "a park"  
놀이 원 - "amusement park"  
심<sup>심</sup>다 - "to be bored"  
지루하<sup>다</sup> - "to be boring"  
유<sup>명</sup>하<sup>다</sup> - "to be famous"  
아니<sup>다</sup> - "to not be"  
없<sup>다</sup> - "to not exist"  
재미(가) 없<sup>다</sup> - "to not be fun," "to not be entertaining"  
맛(이) 없<sup>다</sup> - "to not be delicious," "to not taste good"  
멋(이) 없<sup>다</sup> - "to not be cool," "to be unstylish"  
인기(가) 있<sup>다</sup> - "to be popular"  
인기(가) 없<sup>다</sup> - "to be unpopular"  
인기 - "popularity"  
주제 - "topic," "theme"  
알<sup>라</sup> - "to know"  
로<sup>다</sup> - "to not know"  
이<sup>해</sup>(를) 하<sup>다</sup> - "to understand"  
빨<sup>리</sup> - "quickly," "fast" (adverb)  
꼭 - "surely," "certainly" (adverb)  
일찍 - "early" (adverb)  
늦<sup>게</sup> - "late" (adverb)  
툄<sup>다</sup> - "to be late"  
와/과 함께 - "together with"

## Chapter 15: Korean Markers

We've talked about markers in previous chapters, but here we'll review all of them in more detail, along with examples, to help you know the difference between each of them. Before passing this chapter, make sure you have a good understanding of each of them, as you'll be using these markers daily in your Korean practice.

### Conversation



김철수: 안녕하세요. 저는 철수라고 합니다.

김영희: 안녕하세요. 저는 영희라고 합니다.

김철수: 취가 어떻게 됩니까?

김영희: 제 취는 컴퓨터 게임과 쿡입니다.

김철수: 저는 배와 운웁니다. 그리고 미국에서 셉다.

김영희: 저는 한국에서 셉다. 나이가 어떻게 됩니까?

김철수: 저는 쉰 살입니다.

김영희: 저는 쉰 일곱 살입니다. 만나서 뵙습니다.

김철수: 네뵙습니다.

This chapter will go back and review some of the concepts we've learned in earlier lessons – specifically markers such as the Topic

Marker, the Subject Marker, and the Object Marker. Then we'll go back and re-learn how to introduce ourselves in Korean, but with a much larger vocabulary.

### Topic Marker – 은/는

How to use it: Use 은 after a consonant and 는 after a vowel.

잡  
학

What it does: The Topic Marker marks what the topic of a sentence is. You can think of it translating as "as for," or "when it comes to." Let's look at some examples.

저는 김치를 싫어합니다.

"As for me, I dislike kimchi."

"When it comes to me, I dislike kimchi."

김치는 맛 있습니다.

"As for kimchi, it is delicious."

"When it comes to kimchi, it is delicious."

Think of the Topic Marker as meaning "as for" – by "as for," I mean "as for (as opposed to someone or something else)."

강씨는 김치를 좋아하지만, 저는 싫어합니다.

"As for Mrs. Kang, she likes kimchi, but as for me, I dislike it."

Although the above sentence uses two Topic Markers appropriately, be extra careful when using more than one in the same sentence as it can be awkward. For example, take the following sentence:

김치는 저는 좋아합니다.

"As for kimchi, as for me I like it."

The above type of repetition is awkward even in English, and should be avoided in Korean as well. Most of the time, a sentence will not have more than one Topic Marker, if it even has one at all.

저는 김치를 **좋**합니다.

"As for me, I like kimchi."

왜 **좋**합니까?

"Why do you like it?"

**맛** 있기 때문에 **좋**합니다.

"I like it because it is delicious."

Subject Marker – 이/가

How to use it: Use 이 after a consonant and 가 after a vowel.

집  
학교

What it does: The Subject Marker marks a subject – whatever is doing an action in a sentence, or whatever is being described. Let's look at some examples.

강씨가 **친**합니다.

"Mrs. Kang is a nice person."

빨간색이 **예**쁠합니다.

"Red is a pretty color."

제가 미국 **생**입니다.

"I'm an American."



But the Subject Marker works differently from the Topic Marker; this difference is easier to see in Korean than in English, as often translations in English will be similar. Take the following two sentences for example:

저는 한국 사람입니다.  
"I'm a Korean."

제가 한국 사람입니다.  
"I'm a Korean."

In order to better understand the difference between using the Topic Marker and the Subject Marker, try translating the Topic Marker as "as for" in your head when using it.

저는 한국 사람입니다.  
"As for me, I'm a Korean."

Using the Topic Marker expresses distinction – you're specifying "as for me," as opposed to someone else.

저는 한국 사람입니다.  
"As for me, I'm a Korean."

그렇습니까? 저는 미국 사람입니다.  
"Is that so? As for me, I'm an American."

제가 한국 사람입니다.  
"I'm a Korean."

Using the Subject Marker expresses emphasis – you're simply marking something or someone as the subject of a verb (here the verb is **이다**, "to be").

김치는 맛 있습니다.  
"As for kimchi, it's delicious."

김치가 맛 있습니다.  
"Kimchi is delicious."

Which sentence sounds better in English? In most situations, the second one will be preferred. Grammatically, both sentences are correct.

As for our two sentences, let's take one more look:

저는 한국 사람입니다.  
"As for me, I'm a Korean."

제가 한국 사람입니다.  
"I'm a Korean."

Can't tell which one is better? Don't worry – both of them are fine. Their meanings are slightly different, as we've learned, but being used in context will help you pick which one you'd want to use.

Topic Markers and Subject Markers are often confused by beginning speakers because of their seemingly similar meanings when translated into English. Frequent practice will help you to distinguish when to use one or the other.

### The Topic Marker and Subject Marker Together

Let's take a look at a few examples which use both the Topic Marker and the Subject Marker in the same sentence.

저는 김치가 맛 있습니다.  
"As for me, kimchi is delicious."

강씨는 책이 좋아합니다.  
"As for Mrs. Kang, her hobby is reading."

생선은 고등어 최고입니다.  
"As for fish, mackerel is the best."

### Advanced Notes:

생선 means "fish," and is what you would call the fish on your plate at a restaurant – specifically, dead fish. This is different from 물고기, which refers to live fish.

Most of the time the Topic Marker will come first after the topic of the sentence, followed by the Subject Marker marking the subject of the verb.

### Object Marker – 을/를

How to use it: Use 을 after a consonant and 를 after a vowel.

을  
를

What it does: The Object Marker marks the object of a verb – whatever is receiving an action.

저는 김치를 먹습니다.  
"I eat kimchi."

강씨는 저를 사랑합니다.  
"Mrs. Kang loves me."

새로운 수석선생님을 좋아하니까?  
"Do you like the new math teacher?"

If you're still feeling a little confused about any of these markers even

after several reviews, don't stress. Instead, try to absorb as much Korean as you can. As these concepts do not translate well into English, they may feel foreign at first, but with practice will become second nature.

Now let's look over the conversation.

김철수: 안녕하세요. 저는 철수라고 합니다.  
"Hello. My name is Chul-soo."

저는 \_\_\_\_ (이)라고 합니다.



In addition to 제 이름을 \_\_\_\_입니다 which we learned in Chapter 11, here is one more useful way that you can say your name. Literally it means "I am called \_\_\_\_."

Use 이라고 합니다 after a consonant, or 라고 합니다 after a vowel.

저는 뽀라고 합니다.  
"My name is Billy."

저는 메리라고 합니다.  
"My name is Merrill."

Remember to not use 씨 after your own name; this is only used when referring to other people. Simply use your name as it is.

#### Advanced Notes:

This form originally comes from the verbs 이다 ("to be") and 하다 ("to do"); here 하다 is being used to mean "to say" or "to call" – just like 뭘 하다.

김영희: 안녕하세요. 저는 김영희라고 합니다.  
"Hello. My name is Yung-hee."

김철수: 취가 어떻게 됩니까?  
"Tell me about your hobbies."

"Tell me about..."  
Noun + (이/가) 어떻게 됩니까?

Take a noun and attach the Subject Marker, followed by 어떻게 ("how") and then 됩니까?

You can use this form to say "tell me about," such as in this chapter's conversation.

취가 어떻게 됩니까?  
"Tell me about your hobbies?"

A more natural translation of the above sentence could be "What are your hobbies?"

This form has limited usage, and can't be used to ask about people.

Asking 김철수 씨가 어떻게 됩니까 would therefore be incorrect.

### Advanced Notes:

됩니다? comes from the verb 되다 which means "to become," which we'll learn about in Chapter 17. 어떻게 됩니까? literally means "how does it become?" It might sound strange now, but it will make more sense later when we go over it.

김영희: 제 취는 컴퓨터 게임과 독입니다.  
"My hobbies are computer games and reading."

김철수: 저는 낚시와 운동입니다. 그리고 미국에서 삽니다.  
"My hobbies are fishing and exercise. And I live in America."

**"at," "in" – 에서**

**When using action verbs, such as "to do" or "to go" (action verbs are all verbs that involve doing something), mark the location of where that action is taking place at or in by using **에서**.**

**어에서 공부니까?  
"Where do you study at?"**

**Advanced Notes:**

**어에서 can be shortened to **어때** with no change in meaning. In addition, **어때** is easier to say than **어에서**, so feel free to use it yourself instead.**

**저는 학교에서 공부합니다.  
"I study at school."**

**저는 미국에서 삽니다.  
"I live in America."**

**당에서 밥을 씹니다.  
"I eat (a meal) at the restaurant."**

**병원에서 의를 만납니다.  
"I meet a doctor at the hospital."**

**Note that this particle (**에서**) is different from **에**, which simply marks the location of where something is going or coming (verbs that show movement), or where something exists.**

**저는 한국에서 여행고 싶습니다.  
"I want to travel in Korea."**

**저는 한국에 여행고 싶습니다.  
"I want to travel to Korea."**

저는 한국에 갑니다.  
"I go to Korea."

저는 한국에 있습니다.  
"I am in Korea."

저의 ~~차~~가 미국에 있습니다.  
"My car is in America."

Note that the verb 있다 ("to exist"), although an action verb, does not use 에서. This is an exception.

김영희: 저는 한국에서 삽니다. 나이가 어떻게 됩니까?  
"I live in Korea. How old are you?"

#### Advanced Notes:

The verb 삽니다 is special, in that although it is an action verb it can use either 에 or 에서.  
Therefore, the two following sentences are both correct:

한국에서 삽니다.  
한국에 삽니다.  
"I live in Korea."

The standard way of asking a person's age is by using 나이가 어떻게 됩니까? Although above we said that 어떻게 됩니까? can translate as "tell me about," a much better translation in this situation would simply be "how old are you?"

Using 몇살입니까?, as covered in Chapter 13, is acceptable only when speaking to people younger than yourself (using it to anyone older can be impolite, as it is a direct way of asking a person's age). Therefore, in most situations you should use 나이가 어떻게 됩니까? to ask someone's age.

김철수: 저는 ~~살~~한 살입니다.

"I'm 21 years old."

김영희: 저는 **스물일곱살**입니다. 만나서 **뵙**습니다.

"I'm 27 years old. Nice to meet you."

김철수: **네**뵙습니다.

"Yes, nice to meet you."

Don't expect to master these concepts in an afternoon, but know that it's possible to master them with practice. The more you become familiar with seeing them, hearing them, and using them yourself, the better you will understand when to use each one. As usual, practice using them all wherever you can.

### Practice

Translate to English:

1. 제가 **중** **생** **아닙**다.
2. 김 씨는 **천** 한국 **뵙**니다.
3. 도시는 서울 **최고**입니다.
4. 저는 김철수라고 합니다.
5. 오늘 **오후**에서 **휴가**고 싶습니까?
6. 저는 **정영화**에 가고 싶습니다.

Translate to Korean:

7. "How old is Mr. Kim?"



8. "As for me, I like school."
9. "I do not want to eat cold steak."
10. "My name is [your name]."
11. "What are your hobbies?"
12. "I want to do homework at home."

### New Phrases

저는 \_\_\_\_ (이)라고 - 합니다. "My name is \_\_\_\_."  
어떻게 됩니까? - "Tell me about..."  
나이가 어떻게 됩니까? - "How old are you?"

### New Vocabulary

나이 - "age"  
취미 - "hobby"  
운동 "exercise"  
책 - "reading"  
낚시 - "fishing"  
컴퓨터 게임 - "computer game"  
언어 - "language"  
언어학 "linguistics"  
여행 "travel," "a trip"  
생선 - "(dead) fish"  
고등어 - "mackerel"  
최고 - "(the) best"  
최악 "(the) worst"  
치과 의사 "dentist"  
경찰 "police"  
경찰관 "policeman"

약 "medicine," "drugs"

약국 - "pharmacy"

지갑 - "wallet"

## Chapter 16: Telling Time

Taking what we've learned from Chapter 12 and Chapter 13 on Korean numbers (Sino-Korean numbers and Pure Korean numbers), let's learn how to tell the time.

### Conversation



- A: 지금 몇시입니까?  
B: 저녁 8시 16분입니다.  
A: 오늘 몇일입니까?  
B: 이십일입니다.  
A: 화요일입니다.  
B: 환에요.

### Time Counters

This chapter introduces a few new counters we can use to count lengths of time.

시 "o'clock"

시간 hour counter

**분** minute counter

**초** second counter

While 시 and 시간 both use Pure Korean numbers, 분 and 초 use Sino-Korean numbers.

Let's first take a look at 시.

1 o'clock 한 시

2 o'clock 두 시

3 o'clock 세 시

4 o'clock 네 시

5 o'clock 다섯 시

6 o'clock 여섯 시

7 o'clock 일곱 시

8 o'clock 여덟 시

9 o'clock 아홉 시

10 o'clock 열 시

11 o'clock 열한 시

12 o'clock 열두 시

To specify whether you're referring to A.M. or P.M., add either 오전 ("before noon") or 오후 ("after noon") before saying the time. Or alternatively, you could also add 저녁 ("evening") or 아침 ("morning") before it instead. Pick whichever way you'd like.

오전 열 시

"10 o'clock A.M."

아침 열 시

"10 o'clock A.M."

오후 열 시

"10 o'clock P.M."

저녁 열시  
"10 o'clock P.M."

Remember that A.M. or P.M. in Korean always comes before the time, and not after like in English.

Another useful word is **새벽** ("after midnight"), for marking times that are before people would normally wake up in the morning. Although it would also be grammatically correct in these situations to use **오전** or **아침**, using **새벽** emphasizes that the time is before the morning, and therefore sounds more natural.

새벽 두시  
"2 o'clock past midnight"

새벽 일곱시  
"7 o'clock past midnight"

It's acceptable to use **새벽** for times between 1 o'clock and 7 o'clock, but not afterward.

Counting hours uses Pure Korean numbers and the hour counter **시간**

1 hour 한 시간  
2 hours 두 시간  
3 hours 세 시간  
4 hours 네 시간  
5 hours 다섯 시간  
10 hours 열 시간  
24 hours 스물네 시간

For minutes (**분**) and seconds (**초**) attach Sino Korean numbers to the beginning.

1 minute 일 분  
10 minutes 십분  
59 minutes 오십구 분

1 second 일 초  
20 seconds 이십초  
50 seconds 오십초

And just like in English, counting time goes in order from hours to minutes to seconds.

세 시간 오십분 이십초  
"3 hours, 50 minutes, 22 seconds"

열시간 이 분 삼십초  
"10 hours, 2 minutes, 30 seconds"

네 시간 삼십분  
"4 hours, 30 minutes"

The same goes for telling the time.

세 시 오십분 이십초  
"3 o'clock, 50 minutes, and 22 seconds"

Most often when telling time, saying just the hour and minutes is sufficient.

세 시 오십분  
"3:50"

열시 삼 분  
"10:03"

열두시 삼십분  
"12:30"

In the above sentence, instead of saying "30 minutes" (삼십분) you can also use 반 which means "half."

열두시 반  
"12:30"

네시간 반  
"4 and a half hours," or "4 hours, 30 minutes"

네시 반  
"4:30"

Adding 오전 or 오후 among others that we've learned, will specify the time of day.

오후 네시 반  
"4:30 P.M."

오전 열시 반  
"10:30"

새벽 두시 반  
"2:30 past midnight"

Now that we can count and tell time, let's learn how to work with days, weeks, months, and years.

First let's look at days. We'll start with the names of the days of the week.

Monday 월요일  
Tuesday 화요일  
Wednesday 수요일  
Thursday 목요일  
Friday 금요일  
Saturday 토요일  
Sunday 일요일

Notice how all of them end in 요일. This makes memorizing them quicker. Simply memorize 월, 화, 수, 목, 금, 토, and 일.

Now let's learn how to count days, weeks, months, and years. All of these use Sino Korean numbers.

일 day counter

- 일 일 "1 day"
- 이 일 "2 days"
- 삼 일 "3 days"
- 삼백~~육~~십 일 "365 days"

주일 week counter

- 일 주일 "1 week"
- 이 주일 "2 weeks"
- 사주일 "4 weeks"
- 오십~~이~~ 주일 "52 weeks"

개월 month counter

- 일 ~~월~~ "1 month"
- 사~~월~~ "4 months"
- 육~~월~~ "6 months"
- 십~~이~~ ~~월~~ "12 months"

년 year counter

- 일 년 "1 year"



- 십년 10 years"
- 백 년 100 years"
- 이 천년 the year 2014"

You'll use 년 not only when counting numbers of years, but when saying what year it currently is too, as in the previous example.

### Advanced Notes:

There is also an additional counter for month that uses Pure Korean numbers instead. Let's go over it so you're familiar with how it works, but feel free to stick with using 월 until you're more comfortable. Although 월 is more widely used, either is acceptable.

- 달 month counter
- 한 달 1 month"
- 두 달 2 months"
- 세 달 3 months"
- 다섯 달 5 months"

I should also note that 달 means "moon."

In addition to month, when counting days you have two additional options. There are also Pure Korean versions of "1 day" and "2 days" which you can use instead of their Sino Korean versions. In fact, the Pure Korean versions of "1 day" and "2 days" will be more preferred, although both versions are acceptable.

- 일 일 "1 day"
- 하루 "1 day"

- 이 일 "2 days"
- 이틀 "2 days"

Beyond two days, switch back to using Sino Korean numbers and 일.

- 삼 일 "3 days"
- 오 일 "5 days"
- 십 일 "10 days"

You can also add 동안 ("a period of time") after an amount of time (hours, months, years, etc.) to express that something happens "for" that amount of time.

한 시간 동안

"for 1 hour"

삼십분 땀

"for 30 minutes"

몇시간땀

"for how many hours"

삼 일 땀

"for 3 days"

삼 월 땀

"for 3 months"

팔년땀

"for 8 years"

한국어를 십년 땀 하고 싶습니다.

"I want to study Korean for 10 years."

### Advanced Notes:

Both 한국말 and 한국어 mean "Korean (language)," but 한국어 is much more commonly used than 한국말. Feel free to use either one, but be aware of both words. The same thing applies to 일년 and 한해, among others.

There's just one more thing to go over before we start the conversation, and that is the names of the months. Fortunately, you're in luck. Although English has a separate name for each month of the year, Korean simply numbers the months from 1 to 12, with 1 being January, 2 being February, and so on. When saying the name of the month, use the counter 월.

January 일월

February 이월

March 삼월

April **췌월**  
May **오월**  
June\* **윌\***  
July **췌월**  
August **윌월**  
September **구월**  
October\* **시월\***  
November **윌월**  
December **췌월**

There are only two exceptions here, "June" and "October," which I've marked above with an asterisk. These names changed over time to make them easier to pronounce.

Remember that using **월** to name the months is different from **췌월**, which is for counting how many months.

**일 췌월**  
"1 month"

**일월**  
"January"

**이 췌월**  
"2 months"

**이월**  
"February"

Let's go over the conversation for this chapter.

A: **지금 몇시입니까?**  
"What time is it now?"

You can ask someone the time by using **몇시입니까?**

B: 저녁 **열시** **십분**입니다.  
"It's 10:40 P.M."

A: 오늘 **몇일**입니까?  
"What day (of the month) is it today?"

**몇일** was originally spelled **몇일**, just like **몇월** and **몇시**, but the spelling changed to eliminate ambiguity (because some people were pronouncing it differently).

### Advanced Notes:

Although **몇일** is used for asking the day of the month, you can also find out the day of the week by asking **요일** **몇일**입니까?

**요일** is a noun that means "a day of the week"

Q. 오늘 **요일** **몇일**입니까?  
"What day (of the week) is today?"

A. 수요일입니다.  
"It is Wednesday."

Notice how in the above question **오늘** followed by the Subject Marker (here, **이**). This is because the Subject Marker, as we learned in Chapter 8, often appears in questions to mark what it is that you're asking about.

B: 이 **십육일**입니다.  
"It's the 26th."

A: **감사합니다**.  
"Thank you."

B: **환에요**.  
"You're welcome."

### Advanced Notes:

Although **천에요** is the proper way to say "you're welcome," it's not used as often as you might think. It's actually more common to hear people replying with **아니에요** ("no," "it isn't"), which comes from the verb **아니다**, in real world situations. Feel free to use whichever you'd like. We'll learn how to conjugate **아니에요** later in Chapter 19.

Now let's go over the journal for this chapter.

## Journal



일요일 - 이천월 십 일  
오늘후에 시에 행을 타고 제 천의 천 갑니다.  
제 천는 한국에서 쉽다.  
저는 제 천를 정보고 싶습니다.  
한국에서 한국을 삼 천 합니다.  
행 기합니다.  
구월 십 일까지 한국에 있습니다.  
이미 한 시이기 때문에 지금부터 천합니다.  
안녕히 계세요.

일요일 - 이천월 십 일  
"Sunday - June 15th, 2014"

Complete dates in Korean are written with the year first, followed by the month, and then the day.

오늘후에 시에 행을 타고 제 천의 천 갑니다.

**"Today at 3 o'clock P.M. I am taking an airplane and going to my friend's house."**

### **The Verb 타다**



**You can use the verb 타다 ("to ride") with any method of transportation, including airplanes, cars, bicycles, and buses, among others.**

**차를 타고 학교 갑니다.**

**"I'm riding a car and going to school."**

**A more natural sounding translation would be "I'm going to school by car."**

**배 타고 싶습니까?**

**"Do you want to ride a boat?"**

**저는 자전거를 탈수 없습니다.**

**"I can't ride a bicycle."**

**제 친구는 한국에서 삽니다.**

**"My friend lives in Korea."**

**저는 제 친구를 정말 보고 싶습니다.**

**"I really miss my friend."**

**보고 싶다 literally means "to want to see," but is the most common way of saying "to miss (someone)."**

한국에서 한국말 삼 개월 뽐 공부합니다.  
"In Korea I'll study Korean for 3 months."

Since the previous sentence already mentioned that "I" am the topic of this sentence (using 저는), it's not necessary to repeat it here.

뽐 기대합니다.  
"I'm really looking forward to it."

기대하다 can be used with the Object Marker after something you are looking forward to, or expecting.

선물을 기대합니다.  
"I'm expecting a present."

내일을 기대합니다.  
"I'm looking forward to tomorrow."

Although 뽐 is an adverb that means "a lot," here it would translate better as "really."

구월 15일까지 한국에 있습니다.  
"I'll be in Korea until September 15th."

까지 can be used for not just locations, but for conveying "until" or "up to" in regards to time.

일요일까지  
"until Sunday"

세시까지  
"until 3 o'clock"

월까지 기다랴 없습니다.

"I can't wait until June."

이미 한 시이기 때문에 지금부터 준비합니다.  
"Because it's already 1 o'clock I'll prepare from now."

We learned 에서 in Chapter 13 as a way of saying "from (a location)."  
There's one additional way to say "from" – 부터.

Specifically, 부터 is used to say "from (a time or location)." You can use 까지 together with it to mean "until."

지금부터  
"from now"

지금부터 두시까지  
"from now until 2 o'clock"

삼 일부터  
"from the 3rd"

삼 일부터 이십 일까지  
"from the 3rd to the 29th"

시월부터  
"from October"

시월부터 십二月까지  
"from October to December"

안녕히 계세요.  
"Goodbye."

It should be noted again that although this chapter and the previous chapter use numbers written phonetically in 한글 this is only to help



explain how numbers work. In real Korean, numbers are written using Arabic numerals (and without a space between the number and the counter). Here are just a few real world examples:

1시  
"1 o'clock"

10시간  
"10 hours"

50분  
"50 minutes"

20초  
"20 seconds"

5개월  
"5 months"

3월  
"March"

2014년 9월 12일  
"September 12th, 2014"

Once you are comfortable with how to pronounce Pure Korean and Sino Korean numbers, as well as when to use each one, it is preferred to write them in this way.

### Practice

Translate to Korean:

1. 1 o'clock P.M.

2. 11 o'clock in the morning
3. 6 o'clock in the evening
4. 3 o'clock past midnight
5. 8 o'clock A.M.
6. 3 hours
7. 2 hours and 12 minutes
8. 17 seconds
9. 3 days
10. 2 weeks
11. 8 months
12. 10 years

**Write the names of the months in Korean:**

13. January
14. June
15. November
16. April
17. December
18. September
19. July
20. February
21. May
22. August
23. October
24. March

**Write the days of the week in Korean:**

25. Monday
26. Tuesday
27. Wednesday
28. Thursday
29. Friday

30. Saturday

31. Sunday

Translate to English:

32. 저는 일월에 한국에 가고 싶습니다.

33. 저는 아침아홉시 부터 저녁한 시 까지 학교 있습니다.

34. 내일 월요일 일입니다.

35. 저는 오후한 시에 김 씨를 만납니다.

36. 화요일에 학교 갈수 있습니까?

37. 이번 주에 시험 있습니까?

Translate to Korean:

38. "What time is it?"

39. "What day of the month is it?"

40. "I love December. December is the best."

41. "I also miss Mr. Kim."

42. "Today is (month) (day), (year)."

43. "Tomorrow is Friday."

### New Phrases

몇시입니까? - "What time is it?"

월이니까? - "What day (of the month) is it?"

괜찮습니다. - "No, thank you."

환에요. - "You're welcome."

좋은 아침입니다. - "Good morning."

좋은 하루 되세요. - "Have a nice day."

## New Vocabulary

기(를) 하다 - "to look forward," "to expect"

보고 싶다 - "to miss," "to want to see"

지금부터 - "from now"

부터 - "from (a time or location)"

한국어 - "Korean (language)"

일본어 - "Japanese (language)"

중국어 - "Chinese (language)"

이미 - "already" (adverb)

다시 - "again" (adverb)

한 번 더 - "once more" (adverb)

항공 - "airplane"

타다 - "to ride"

저녁 "evening"

아침 "morning"

오후 "after noon," "P.M."

오전 "before noon," "A.M."

정오 - "noon"

새벽 "past midnight"

몇시 - "what time"

몇월 "what day"

몇년 - "what month"

몇년 "what year," "how many years"

시 - "o'clock"

시간 hour counter

분 - minute counter

초 second counter

반 "half"  
달 "month," "moon"  
날 "day"  
해 "year"  
하루 - "one day"  
이틀 - "two days"  
일 - day counter  
주일 - week counter  
월 - month counter  
년 year counter  
월 - month name counter  
일월 - "January"  
이월 - "February"  
삼월 - "March"  
월 - "April"  
오월 - "May"  
월 - "June"  
칠월 - "July"  
팔월 - "August"  
구월 - "September"  
시월 - "October"  
십일월 - "November"  
십이월 - "December"  
일요일 - "Sunday"  
월요일 - "Monday"  
화요일 - "Tuesday"  
수요일 - "Wednesday"  
목요일 - "Thursday"  
금요일 - "Friday"  
토요일 - "Saturday"  
자전거 - "bicycle"  
버스 "bus"  
지하철 - "subway"  
기차 - "(electric) train"

열차 - "(ordinary) train"

택시 - "taxi"

이번 주 - "this week"

지난주 - "last week"

다음주 - "next week"

이번 달 "this month"

지난달 "last month"

다음달 "next month"

봄 "Spring"

여름 "Summer"

가을 - "Autumn"

겨울 "Winter"

동안 - "a period of time"

오랫동안 - "for a long time" (adverb)

준비(를) 하다 - "to prepare"

## Chapter 17: Shopping

In this chapter we'll learn how to count money, purchase things, and ask for things. We'll also cover grammar forms for expressing "to" and "from" a person.

### Conversation



김철수: 저기요. 이 시계가 얼마니까?

직원: 삼만구천입니다.

김철수: 조금 깎주세요.

직원: 옹호니다. 그럼삼만원입니다.

김철수: 조금 더 깎주세요. 이만오천은 어떻습니까?

직원: 안 됩니다. 그럼저에게 이만구천을 주세요.

김철수: 여기 이만구천입니다. 깎합니다!

직원: 안녕히 가세요.

김철수: 네영 체요!

### Counting Dollars

In Chapter 12 we learned how to count 원 using Sino Korean numbers. Now let's take a quick moment to learn how to count dollars and cents.

**달러 dollar counter**

→ 일~~불~~1 dollar"

→ 십~~불~~10 dollars"

→ 만~~불~~10,000 dollars"

**전 penny counter**

→ 일~~전~~1 cent"

→ 십~~전~~12 cents"

→ 오~~십~~전59 cents"

Dollars and cents are both counted using Sino Korean numbers. Say the dollar amount, followed directly by the amount of cents.

일~~불~~삼~~전~~  
"\$1.30"

삼~~불~~이~~전~~  
"\$3.20"

십~~불~~이~~전~~  
"\$10.02"

백~~불~~  
"\$100"

Note that foreign currencies (such as the dollar) will be written the same way they would be normally – \$1.30, for example. In order to say them, you will need to know how to use their counters, **불** and **전**

"Please"  
Verb Stem + (으)세요

Let's learn how to tell someone to do something for you – "please go



to the store," or "please do it." We've already learned how to use 주세요 to say "please give me." This actually comes from the verb 주다, which means "to give." The ending part, 세요, is used to make the verb a polite command. By polite command, I mean it is similar to asking someone "please."

Take the verb stem and add 으세요 if it ends in a consonant, or add 세요 if it ends in a vowel.

주다 → 주 + 세요

주세요  
"Please give me."

하다 → 하 + 세요

하세요  
"Please do it."

가다 → 가 + 세요

가세요  
"Please go."

들어오다 → 들어오 + 세요

들어오세요.  
"Please come in."

찾다 → 찾 으세요

찾세요  
"Please look for it."

푹 → 놓 → 놔 세요

놓세요

"Please put it down."

For verbs ending in a single ㅁ, remove the ㅁ before doing the above step.

팔 → 팔 → 파 세요

팔세요

"Please sell."

### Advanced Notes:

This is the same form used in the phrases 안녕히 가세요 and 안녕히 계세요. However, 안녕히 가세요 and 안녕히 계세요 are not polite commands, but are regular questions. This is because this form, (으)세요, has an additional use in speaking politely (specifically, when using what's called honorific speech). This book doesn't have room to cover how to use this form in this way, but just know that they are formed the same way.

김철수: 저기요. 이 시계가 얼마니까?

"Excuse me. How much is this watch?"

"Excuse me!"



As we learned in Chapter 11, 저기 means "there (farther)" and 여기 means "here." However, when using them to call people they have a different usage. You can call out to someone else by saying either 저기요 ("You over there!") or 여기요 ("Hey, I'm over here!"). Only use these words when you need to get an employee's attention, whether at a restaurant or in a store.

여기요!  
저기요!  
"Excuse me!"

However, this does not mean "excuse me" when you are apologizing to someone, or recognizing that you may be interrupting someone – perhaps after bumping into a stranger on the street, or when trying to ask directions. For these situations, use the verb **참나다** ("to do a discourtesy").

**참나다.**  
"Excuse me."

**참나지만...**  
"Excuse me but..."

The above sentence could then be followed by your request.

#### Advanced Notes:

You might see and hear **참네만** used as well. This has the same meaning as **참나지만**, but is a more common, quicker way of expressing the same thing.

직원: 삼만구천입니다.  
"It's 39,000 Won."

김철수: 조금 **깎주세요**.  
"Please give me a discount."

#### Advanced Notes:

**깎주다** translates as "to give a discount," but literally it means "to trim down." Figuratively, by saying **깎주세요** you're asking the employee to trim down the price.

직원: **알겠습니다**. 그럼 삼만원입니다.  
"Understood. Well then it is 30,000 Won."

김철수: 조금 더 깎주세요. 이만오원은 어떻습니까?  
"Please give me a little more of a discount. How is 25,000 Won?"

조금 더 can be used anywhere as an adverb to mean "a little more."

조금 더 주세요.  
"Please give me a little more."

조금 더 연습하세요.  
"Please practice a little more."

조금 더 화세요.  
"Please try a little more."

We first saw the verb 어떻다 ("to be how") in Chapter 8 when we learned the adverb 어떻게 ("how"). Then we saw it make another appearance in Chapter 10 when we learned the adjective 어떤 ("what kind of"). Now we're going to be using it as a regular descriptive verb.

어떻습니까?  
"How is it?"

You can use the verb 어떻다 anywhere to ask someone "how" something is.

학교 어떻습니까?  
"How is school?"

그 영화가 어떻습니까?  
"How is that movie?"

음식 어떻습니까?  
"How is the food?"

When asking "how" someone is, instead ask 어떻게 지내세요 – "how are you doing?" You can ask this in the same situations as 잘 지내세요, which we learned in Chapter 7.

Q. 어떻게 지내세요?  
"How are you doing?"

A. 아주 좋습니다.  
"I'm very good."

#### Advanced Notes:

Using the verb 어떻게 to ask how someone is has a different meaning – it asks about them as a person, or their personality.

친구들이 어떻습니까?  
"How are your friends?"

The above could be asked if you were wondering what type of people their friends are. If you are wondering how the friends are doing, instead use 어떻게 지내세요.

친구들이 어떻게 지내세요?  
"How are your friends doing?"

Let's take one more look at the second part of this sentence.

이만오천은 어떻습니까?  
"How is 25,000 Won?"

Remembering what we learned about the Topic Marker in Chapter 15, this sentence would literally translate to "As for 25,000 Won, how is it?"

직원: 안 됩니다. 그럼저에게 이만구천을 주세요.  
"That won't work. Well then, give me 29,000 Won."

되다 and 안 되다

되다 and 안 되다 are opposites. In the above sentence, 되다 means "to be okay" and 안 되다 means "to not be okay."

Q. 오늘 **학교** 있지만 **원**에 가고 싶습니다.  
"I have school today, but I want to go to the park."

A. 안 됩니다.  
"No."  
"That's not okay."

되다 can also mean "to work," and 안 되다 can mean "to not work."

제 **컴퓨터**가 안 됩니다.  
"My computer doesn't work."

지금 됩니까?  
"Does it work now?"

저의 **핸드폰** 안 됩니다.  
"My cell phone doesn't work."

#### Advanced Notes:

Although **핸드폰** is certainly the most common word for "cell phone," you may also choose to use either **휴대폰** ("mobile phone") or **휴대전화** ("mobile telephone") instead.

And finally, 되다 can also mean "to become," and 안 되다 can mean "to not become."

왜 선생님이 되고 싶습니까?  
"Why do you want to become a teacher?"

저는 더 **좋은 사람**이 되고 싶습니다.  
"I want to become a better person."

저는 **포수**가 되고 싶지 않습니다.

**"I don't want to become a professional athlete."**

Most often, as in the examples above, you will see 되다 and 안 되다 used together with the Subject Marker.

**To and From a Person  
에게 and 에게(서)**

We've learned how to say "to" and "from" a location (에서...까지), and "to" and "from" a time (부터...까지). Here we'll learn how to say "to" and "from" a person.

To say "to" someone, attach **에게** after the person.

**저에게 주세요.**  
**"Please give it to me."**

**김 씨에게 편지를 보내고 싶습니다.**  
**"I want to send a letter to Mr. Kim."**

**김 씨에게 하세요.**  
**"Speak to Mr. Kim."**

### **Advanced Notes:**

Both the verbs **묻다** (하다) and **물어보다** will use **에게**, and not the Object Marker, when stating to whom it is you are talking or asking. The same applies to any verb that shows communication, such as **말하다** (하다).

**박 씨에게 물어보세요.**  
**"Ask Mr. Park."**

**내일 정 씨에게 전화하세요.**  
**"Call Mr. Jeong tomorrow."**

**김 씨에게 주세요.**  
**"Please give it to Mr. Kim."**

To say "from" someone, attach 에게서 after the person.

저에게서 배우 싶습니까?  
"Do you want to learn from me?"

김 씨에게서 받습니다.  
"I receive it from Mr. Kim."

However, the 서 in 에게서 is optional. Feel free to simply use 에게 for both "to" and "from" as long as the meaning isn't completely vague by doing so.

김 씨에게 줍니다.  
"I give it to Mr. Kim."

김 씨에게 받습니다.  
"I receive it from Mr. Kim."

#### Advanced Notes:

You can use the same 에게(서) to say "to" and "from" an animal as well.

김철수: 여기 이만구원입니다. 감사합니다!  
"Here is 29,000 Won. Thank you!"

직원: 안녕히 가세요.  
"Goodbye."

김철수: 네! 많이 팔아요!  
"Okay, sell a lot!"

많이 팔아요 comes from 많이 팔다 ("to sell a lot"), and is a common phrase you can say to a store employee after purchasing something. This phrase is similar to saying "I hope your business does well."

Practice



**Write the following amounts in Korean:**

1. \$0.10
2. \$1.00
3. \$1.50
4. \$5.25
5. \$80.11
6. \$1,020.33

**Translate to Korean:**

7. "Please give me \$10."
8. "Please take a shower."
9. "My car does not work."
10. "I want to be a doctor."
11. "Please buy medicine at the pharmacy."

**Translate to English:**

12. **물** 조금 더 주세요.
13. 왜 선생님이 되고 싶지 않습니까?
14. 저는 김 씨에게서 한국**말** 배다.
15. 한국 **음** 어떻습니까? **했**습니까?
16. **뭘** **책**하세요.

## New Phrases

(조금) 깎주세요. - "Please give me a discount."

(을/를) 더 주세요. - "Please give me more..."

많이 팔아요. - "Sell a lot."

여기요. - "Over here." ("Excuse me.")

저기요. - "Over here." ("Excuse me.")

어떻게 지내세요? - "How are you doing?"

실례합니다. - "Excuse me."

실례하지만... - "Excuse me but..."

## New Vocabulary

되다 - "to become," "to be okay," "to work"

안 되다 - "to not become," "to not be okay," "to not work"

들어오다 - "to come in"

들어가다 - "to go in"

실례하다 - "to do a discourtesy"

물어보다 - "to ask"

(답) "answer"

(답) 하다 - "to answer"

계획 "plan"

계획(을) 하다 - "to plan"

결정 "decision"

결정(을) 하다 - "to decide," "to make a decision"

사 - "to buy"

팔 - "to sell"

주문(을) 하다 - "to order (something)"

빌다 - "to borrow," "to lend"

놓 - "to put down," "to let go"

넣 - "to put in"

보내다 - "to send"

도와주다 - "to help"

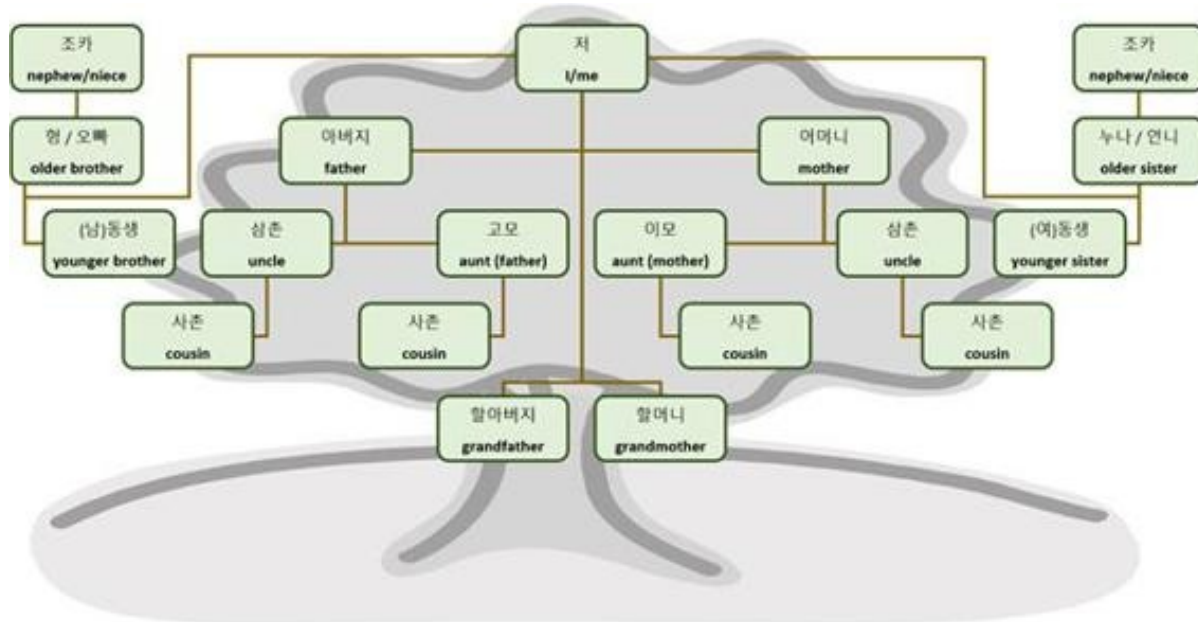
주다 - "to give"

쓰다 - "to use," "to write"  
용하다 - "to utilize," "to use"  
나누다 - "to share," "to divide"  
샤워(를) 하다 - "to take a shower"  
씻다 - "to wash," "to bathe"  
세수(를) 하다 - "to wash one's face and hands," "to wash up"  
빨래 - "laundry"  
빨래(를) 하다 - "to do the laundry"  
젓가락 - "(dirty) dishes"  
젓가락(를) 하다 - "to do the dishes"  
쓰레기 - "garbage," "trash"  
버리다 - "to throw away"  
목표 "a goal"  
질투 - "to be jealous"  
연습(을) 하다 - "to practice"  
노력 "effort"  
노력(을) 하다 - "to try," "to put forth effort"  
샴푸 "shampoo"  
칫솔 "toothbrush"  
치약 "toothpaste"  
시계 - "clock," "watch"  
편지 - "(written) letter"  
메시지 - "message"  
주지 - "note"  
프로 선수 - "professional athlete"  
팀 "team"  
껌 "gum"  
씹다 - "to chew"  
달러 계산기 dollar counter  
펜스 penny counter  
에게 - "to (a person)"  
에게(서) - "from (a person)"  
조금 더 - "a little more" (adverb)

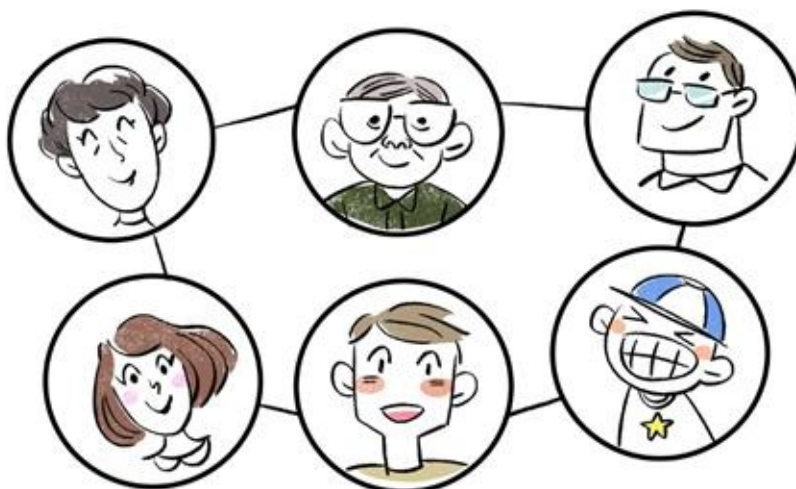
## Chapter 18: Relationships

In this chapter we'll learn essential vocabulary related to the family, and relationships.

Read through the chapter first, then come back here as necessary to review using the following illustration. It might look a bit overwhelming at first, but once you've learned the basic vocabulary for relationships, it's simple.



Conversation



김철수: 가짜 어떻게 됩니까?

김영희: 뽕과 오빠가 한 명 있습니다. 당신은요?

김철수: 저는 뽕과 누나가 한 명 있고, 형도 한 명 있고, 뽕도 한 명 있습니다.

김영희: 정말입니까?

김철수: 네, 맞습니다. 재미있습니다.

## Family Vocabulary

Historically as well as today, family is everything to Koreans, so it's no surprise that Korean vocabulary can be a bit extensive when it comes to words related to family members. I created this chapter as a guide to teach you the most common, most useful words for referring to family members.

부모 "parents"

아이 "child"

아들 "son"

딸 daughter"

### Advanced Notes:

You'll see words with 님 attached to the end frequently in Korean. 님 attaches to titles, such as "teacher," "parent" or "boss," when used to refer to that person politely.

First let's take a look at the words for "older brother" and "older

sister."

형 "older brother" (said by males)

오빠 "older brother" (said by females)

누나 "older sister" (said by males)

언니 "older sister" (said by females)

Depending on whether you are a boy or a girl, there will be a different word you will use for "older brother" and "older sister." Be careful to learn these correctly, because using the wrong word will sound strange to a Korean.

If you are male, focus on learning 형 and 누나 first, before learning how a female would say them.

If you are female, focus on learning 오빠 and 언니 first, before learning how a male would say them.

The words for "younger brother" and "younger sister" are much simpler. It is the same word, whether you are male or female.

동생 "younger sibling"

남동생 "male younger sibling"

여동생 "female younger sibling"

You could therefore say 남동생 to refer to a male younger sibling, or 여동생 to refer to a female younger sibling. Or, simply say 동생 to refer to a younger sibling without having to specify the gender.

The words for "mother" and "father" are also simple.

어머니 "mother"

엄마 "mom"

아버지 "father"

아빠 "dad"

Use **아빠** as a more friendly version of **아버지** and **어머니**, such as to your own parents. However, note that these words are not appropriate for people with whom you are not close and well acquainted. It would not be appropriate to refer to a stranger's parents using **아빠** and **어머니**.

할아버지 "grandfather"

할머니 "grandmother"

중할아버지 "great grandfather"

중할머니 "great grandmother"

손아들 "grandson"

손녀 "granddaughter"

Once you've learned **할아버지** and **할머니**, learning **중할아버지** and **중할머니** should be easy.

English only has one word for "aunt," but Korean has two, depending on whether you're referring to an aunt on your mother's side of the family, or your father's side.

이모 "aunt" (mother's side)

고모 "aunt" (father's side)

However, there is just one word to learn for "uncle."

삼촌 "uncle"

### Advanced Notes:

There is actually a second word for "uncle," but it's not always necessary to use it. This is because **삼촌** actually means an uncle on your father's side of the family. To refer to an uncle on your mother's side, use **외삼촌**. However, unless you need to specify which side of the family the uncle is from, it's not necessary to use **외삼촌**; you can use **삼촌** to refer to an uncle on either side.

Here's how to refer to your uncles' and aunts' children.

촌cousin"

And finally, you only need to know one word to refer to your siblings' children (a niece or nephew).

조카niece," "nephew"

Review these terms one more time, then let's take a look at the conversation.

김철수: 가짜 어떻게 됩니까?  
"How many people are in your family?"

Previously we learned that 어떻게 됩니까? was used to mean "tell me about." In this situation, what the speaker actually wants to know is how her family is composed – specifically, how many family members 영희 has. This is why 가짜 어떻게 됩니까? translates better as "How many people are in your family?"

김영희: 부모와 오빠가 한 명 있습니다. 당신은요?  
"There are my parents and one older brother. And you?"

Notice how there is no need to refer to "my" parents, as 부모 is enough. The same goes here for 오빠, or for any family terms.

### Advanced Notes:

You may hear 우리 used directly before family member vocabulary in Korean speech. This literally means "our," but is used to mean that the family member the speaker is talking about does not only belong to him or herself. English uses "my" to refer to family members, but Korean does not assume that a family member belongs to only you.

우리 부모  
"our parents" → "my parents"



뭐 어때  
"our mother" → "my mother"

Using 저의 (or 제) is also acceptable, and is not incorrect, but using 뭐 or nothing at all is more preferred.

Also note how when counting siblings in the previous sentence, the family member comes before the Subject Marker, followed by the number.

저는 오빠가 한 명 있습니다.  
"I have one older brother."

당신

Although I said that Koreans will use a person's name instead of saying "you," there actually is a word for "you" in Korean – 당신. However! You should avoid 당신 except in the following situations only:

1. You do not know the other person's name, status, or anything about them at all.
2. You're talking to your spouse (당신 can also mean "dear" in this way).
3. You're angry at another person, and refuse to even call them by their name.

An example of 1 would be if you were talking to someone who you couldn't see, or to someone who suddenly came to you and began talking without any sort of introduction. Not knowing whether you need to be polite to them or not, it would be acceptable to ask them who they are using 당신 for "you."

An example of 2 would be if you are speaking politely to your spouse. However, this is more of a traditional usage, as younger couples will call each other by their first names, or nicknames. You might also see this usage in books.

An example of 3 would be similar to 1 – you're calling them 당신 because you do not know anything about them, or no longer wish to. Using 당신 can cause the listener to feel distanced from you, so it should be avoided outside of these three cases.

Besides these few cases, you shouldn't use 당신. However, in the previous conversation I included it only to show you that a word for "you" does exist, and to demonstrate how it works. It can be rude when used in other situations.

### Advanced Notes:

There are many other words for "you," but they are not acceptable in polite situations (but are acceptable around close friends who are younger than you). Be careful when using any translation you may find for "you," as all of them can be rude, even when used with close friends, unless you know their usage.

One more word for "you" I'll introduce is an alternative to 당신; the word is 그쪽. You can use 그쪽 only in one situation.

1. You do not know the other person's name, status, or anything about them at all.

As such, 그쪽 is more limited than 당신, but there is one more difference. Using 그쪽 to a stranger is not impolite.

그쪽 literally means "that way." It loosely translates as "you, the person that way."

그쪽요?

"How about you?"

그쪽 가족 어떻게 됩니까?

"How many people are in your family?"

However, with this said, it's still important to quickly assess the other person's name or status, and then to cease using 그쪽 or 당신 as soon as you can.

## 그 and 그녀

These are not good words to use either, but I want to let you know that they exist.

그 "he," "him"

그녀 "she," "her"

These two words are solely to be used within textbooks as direct translations for the English words "he/him" and "she/her." They shouldn't be used in real Korean speech, as they sound rude when spoken. Hopefully due to the way that I've arranged the lessons in this book, you should be able to see by now that these words aren't really necessary for speaking Korean. Still, you should be able to recognize them and know what they mean.

Remember that if you need to say "he" or "she" and can't remember a person's name or title (김철수 씨, or 선생님, for example), you can still sound polite using 그분.

김철수: 저는 ~~부모~~과 누나가 한 명있고, 형도 한 명있고, 쌍도 한 명있습니다.  
"As for me, there are my parents and one older sister, and one older brother, and also one younger sibling."

김영희: 정말 ~~가족~~입니다.  
"It's really a big family."

In Korean, "big family" has its own vocabulary word – ~~대가족~~ ~~가족~~. Although you might be tempted to conjugate the descriptive verb ~~되다~~, "to be big," this would sound awkward in Korean as ~~되다~~ refers to something's actual size. Instead, in English a "big family" refers to having many family members, so ~~대가족~~ should be used.

김철수: 네 ~~가족~~ ~~가족~~ 많 재미있습니다.

**"Yes, there are many people and it's entertaining."**

### **Culture Notes:**

**Before reading further, make sure that you have a good understanding of how to use each of the four words 형, 오빠, 누나, and 언니.**

**These four words are a bit special, in that they can also be used to refer to friends, and not only family members.**

**형**

**"older male friend" (said by males)**

**오빠**

**"older male friend" (said by females)**

**누나**

**"older female friend" (said by males)**

**언니**

**"older female friend" (said by females)**

**Just like before, remember that each word is to be used by either males or females, and to be careful to use the right ones.**

### **Advanced Notes:**

**In addition, 삼촌 and 이모 have one more use – when calling out to strangers who are older than yourself. If you want to get the attention of a man or a woman who you are not close to, such as a waiter or waitress in a restaurant, you may use 삼촌 ("uncle") to males, or 이모 ("aunt") to females.**

### **Practice**

**How would you say the following words:**

**1. Older brother**

2. Older sister
3. Younger brother
4. Younger sister

Translate to Korean:

5. "I also have a big family."
6. "How many people are in your family, Mr. Kim?"
7. "I really love my mother."
8. "I want to study with my older sister."

Translate to English:

9. 저의 형도 김치를 ~~좋~~합니다.
10. 저의 언니는 ~~훌~~ 가수입니다.
11. 오늘 ~~오후~~에서 저의 누나를 만 ~~났~~다.
12. 저의 형을 왜 미워합니까?

### New Phrases

가족이 어떻게 됩니까? - "How many people are in your family?"  
축하합니다. - "Congratulations."

### New Vocabulary

걱정(을) 하다 - "to worry"  
약속(을) 하다 - "to promise"  
관계 - "relationship"

부모 - "parents"  
아이 - "child"  
아기 - "baby"  
당신 - "you" (not polite)  
그 - "he/him" (not polite)  
그녀 - "she/her" (not polite)  
대가족 "big family"  
축하(를) 하다 - "to congratulate"  
형 - "older brother" (used by males)  
오빠 - "older brother" (used by females)  
누나 - "older sister" (used by males)  
언니 - "older sister" (used by females)  
뽕 - "younger sibling"  
남뽕 - "male younger sibling"  
여뽕 - "female younger sibling"  
어머니 - "mother"  
엄마 "mom"  
아버지 - "father"  
아빠 - "dad"  
할아버지 - "grandfather"  
할머니 - "grandmother"  
이모 "aunt" (mother's side)  
고모 "aunt" (father's side)  
조카 "niece," "nephew"  
삼촌 "uncle"  
촌 - "cousin"  
아들 - "son"  
딸 "daughter"  
손 - "grandson"  
손녀 - "granddaughter"  
중할아버지 - "great grandfather"  
중할머니 - "great grandmother"  
남편 "husband"  
아내 - "wife"

원 - "old person"

어른 "adult"

삶 "life"

죽음 "death"

## Chapter 19: Informal Korean

The time has come for us to switch from formal to informal Korean. We'll learn how to conjugate the **요** form – the most common, popular form in use in Korean. We'll also learn about when it's necessary to use formal, as well as informal Korean.

I recommend that you spend extra time reading over this chapter to make sure you know each and every rule. These conjugation rules will also be essential as you learn additional grammar rules in the future.

### Conversation



조지: 안녕하세요!

임이랑: 안녕하세요! 아, 혹시 한국 사람이에요?

조지: 아니에요. 저는 미국 사람이에요.

임이랑: 정말요? 한국어도 할 수 있어요?

조지: 네 미국 사람이지만 한국어를 조금 해요. 하지만 완벽하지 않아요.

### Formal vs. Informal Korean

Up until now, everything we have learned in this book has been formal



**Korean. By formal, I mean extra polite. This is because all of the concepts we've learned so far can be taught more clearly using formal Korean, instead of using informal Korean. Specifically, using the 니다 and 니까 endings is considered formal.**

**But knowing a foreign language means being able to speak and understand it in all situations, including both formal and informal situations. By informal, I mean polite – but less polite than formal. We've now learned a good portion of the basics of the Korean language already, and this is why it is time for us to begin covering informal Korean.**

**So what is informal Korean, and when do we use it? An easier way to answer this question is by first showing you when you should use formal Korean (such as the 니다 and 니까 endings).**

**Formal Korean is used in these situations:**

- 1. Meeting people for the first time who are older than you**
- 2. Job interviews**
- 3. Business relations**
- 4. When you want to sound extra polite**

**Informal Korean can be used in all other situations.**

**Using the wrong kind of Korean (formal or informal) in any situation can come across as either rude, or overly polite. As a non-Korean, you won't be held to the same high standards as a native Korean speaker at first, but as your Korean improves you will be expected to know which kind of language to use with each person you communicate with. It's much easier to learn proper, formal Korean at first, and then to**

learn informal Korean, than it is to go the other way; it's better to be overly polite than rude.

## The 요 Form

In this chapter we will be learning how to conjugate verbs into a new informal form – the 요 form. Previously, we've only been working with the **ㄴ니다** and **ㄴ까** forms. But informal does not mean rude; on the contrary, informal Korean is still polite, but less polite than formal. As such, it should not be used in situations where you want to sound more formal, such as the four situations listed previously.

The 요 form isn't as straightforward to conjugate as the **ㄴ니다** or **ㄴ까** forms, but it does have a set of rules which it follows nicely. With a bit of practice, it will become second nature.

The meaning of the 요 form is the same as the **ㄴ니다** or **ㄴ까** form – yes, it can be used for making both statements and questions – simply add a question mark to turn the sentence into a question. The only difference is that the 요 form is not formal.

The basic steps to conjugating the 요 form are as so:

1. Get the verb stem.
2. Add **아** after **ㅏ** or **ㅓ**, or add **어** after anything else.
3. Attach **요**.

Remove the **다** at the end of a verb to get the verb stem. Then look at the vowel in the last syllable. If that vowel is **ㅏ** or **ㅓ**, then attach **아** to the end of it. If that vowel is anything else, then attach **어** to the end of it. Then attach **요**.

Before we get into any more rules, let's take a look at some examples

of this in action.

먹다 → 먹  
먹(ㅏ) → 먹어  
→ 먹어요

After getting the verb stem of 먹다, which is 먹, we look at the vowel in the last syllable. The last vowel in 먹 is ㅏ, which isn't ㅏ or ㅓ, so we attach 어 to the end. Then we attach 요, and we're finished.

Let's look at another example.

좋다 → 좋  
좋(ㅓ) → 좋아  
→ 좋아요

First we take the verb stem of 좋다, which is 좋. Then we look at the vowel in the last syllable. Here, the last vowel of 좋 is ㅓ, so we attach 아 to the end. Finally we attach 요 to the end.

Although this is the basic rule for conjugating the 요 form, there are also some other rules to consider depending on the type of verb. Let's go over each of them one at a time.

### Rule 1: Ends in a vowel with no consonants

If the verb stem ends in a vowel without any consonants on the bottom, then instead of adding 아 or 어 to the end of it like we did in the above examples, the 아 or 어 ending will combine into the last syllable. This is much simpler than it sounds.

가다 → 가  
가(ㅏ) → 가아 → 가  
→ 가요

After taking the verb stem of 가다, which is 가, we look at the vowel in the last syllable. The last vowel is ㅣ, so we would normally attach 아 to the end.

But see how the 아 combined into 가? This is because it has the same vowel sound as it. It would be unnecessary to drag out the sound and say 가아요, so this is why this rule exists in the first place. This rule makes it easier for us to say these types of verbs more quickly.

오다 → 오  
오 (ㅗ) → 오아 → 와  
→ 와요

Saying 오아 quickly will sound like 와 anyway.

주다 → 주  
주 (ㅜ) → 주어 → 줘  
→ 줘요

Let's take a look at one more.

보다 → 보  
보 (ㅜ) → 보아 → 봐  
→ 봐요

## Rule 2: Ends in ㅣ

If the verb stem ends with ㅣ, then instead of adding 아 or 어 to the end of it, the 아 or 어 ending will combine into the last syllable. This is similar to Rule 1, and works in the same way. However, since ㅣ is not ㅗ or ㅜ, you will always add ㅓ to the end.

싸다 → 싸

새 ( | ) → 새어 → 새  
→ 새요

It should feel natural to apply this rule as well.

가르치다 → 가르치  
가르치 ( | ) → 가르치어 → 가르쳐  
→ 가르쳐요

Here's one more example.

파 → 피  
피 ( | ) → 피어 → 피려  
→ 피요

### Rule 3: Ends in —

If the verb stem ends with —, first remove the —. Then you will need to look at the 2nd to last syllable. If the 2nd to last syllable ends in ㅏ or ㅑ, add ㅓ to the end. If it's any other vowel, add ㅗ to the end.

백 — → 백  
백 — ) → 백  
백 + ㅏ → 백  
→ 백요

In the above example, after we removed the — we were left with 백, so we had to then look at the 2nd to last syllable – ㅏ. Since 백 ends in ㅏ, we added ㅓ to the end. Then we finished by attaching 요.

예뻐 → 예  
예 — ) → 예  
예 + ㅑ → 예  
→ 예요

In this example, after we removed the —, the 2nd to last syllable is 예 so we added ㅏ to the end.

작 → 쓰  
ㅅ(—) → ㅅ  
ㅅ + ㅏ → 써  
→ 셔

Here, there is no 2nd to last syllable, because the entire verb is only two syllables. In this case, you'll always add ㅏ to the end.

### Advanced Notes:

The reason you'd always add ㅏ to the end in this situation is because the only syllable to look at is the last one remaining. In the above example, ㅅ is all that's left, and if you remember from our basic rules of conjugation, — is neither ㅏ or ㅓ so it would require adding ㅏ to the end.

### Rule 4: Ends in ㄹ

Although ㄹ technically also ends in — like in Rule 2, this is a special case. When the verb stem ends in ㄹ, first remove the —. Then add an extra ㄹ to the bottom of the 2nd to last syllable. Finally, look again at the 2nd to last syllable; if it's ㅏ or ㅓ, add ㅏ to the end, else add ㅏ to the end.

로다 → 로  
로 (ㄹ) → 로  
물 (ㅓ) → 물 + ㅓ → 뭍  
→ 뭍요

This might seem a bit confusing since there are multiple steps, but don't worry about it. There are only a few of these verbs in Korean, and the ones you will use are so common that you will be able to memorize them easily just from using them often.

부다 → 부  
부 (르) → 부  
불 (ㄸ) → 불 + ㅏ → 뽀  
→ 뽀요

Let's take a look at one more example.

따다 → 따  
따 (르) → 따  
달 (ㅏ) → 달 + ㅏ → 땀  
→ 땀요

### Rule 5: Ends in ㅁ (Descriptive Verb)

This rule only applies to descriptive verbs. When the verb stem ends in ㅁ (and no other consonants), first remove the ㅁ. Then add ㅜNext (since ㅜ does not end in ㄴ or ㄷ), add ㅏ. Then, remember Rule 1; ㅜ and ㅏ combine to become ㅜ.

뽀 → 뽀  
뽀(ㅁ) → 뽀  
뽀 + ㅜ → 뽀우  
뽀우 ㅏ → 뽀워  
→ 뽀워요

Let's look at another example.

맵다 → 맵  
맵 (ㅁ) → 맵  
맵 + ㅜ → 맵우  
맵우 ㅏ → 맵워  
→ 맵워요

Here's one more example.

덥 → 덥  
덥ㅂ) → 더  
더 + 우 → 더우  
더우 ㅣ → 더워  
→ 더워요

Remember that this rule only applies to descriptive verbs. Action verbs that end in ㅂ will not conjugate using any of these special rules, but will conjugate completely normally.

### Advanced Notes:

An exception to this rule is the action verb 굽 ("to bake") which conjugates to become 구워요.

In addition, several descriptive verbs that end with the sound 읊 (읊, 읊, 읊, etc.) will also conjugate uniquely.

읊 → 고와요

까다읊 → 까다와요

잡 → 잡요

But many will still follow the general rules.

세읊 → 세워요

외읊 → 외워요

Take heed of exceptions as you see them, but remember that most verbs will follow the rules.

### Rule 6: Ends in ㅁ

If the verb stem ends in ㅁ, then you don't need to add anything other than 요 to the end.

보내다 → 보내  
→ 보내요



Here's one more example.

새다 → 새  
→ 새로

### Rule 7: Ends in ㄷ

If the verb ends in ㄷ, the ㄷ will change into ㄹ.

걷다 → 걸  
걸(ㄷ) → 거 + ㄹ → 걸  
걸어요

Here's another example.

듣다 → 듣  
듣(ㄷ) → 들 + ㄹ → 들  
들어요

And here's one last example.

묻다 → 묻  
묻(ㄷ) → 무 + ㄹ → 물  
물어요

However, there are also a few common verbs that do not follow this rule that you should keep in mind.

빚다 → 빚어요  
빚다 → 빚어요  
얹다 → 얹어요

### Rule 8: 어떻게, 그렇다, 이렇다

These three verbs conjugate differently.

어떻다 becomes 어때요.

수업 어때요?  
"How are your classes?"

그렇다 becomes 그래요.

아, 그래요?  
"Ah, really?"

이렇다 becomes 이래요.

항이래요.  
"It's always this way."

### Rule 9: 하다 and 되다

If the verb ends in 하다, or if the verb is just 하다, it simply becomes 해요. This rule applies to any verb that ends in 하다, whether it's a descriptive verb or an action verb.

하다 → 해  
→ 해요

Here's one more example.

공하다 → 공해  
→ 공해요

### Advanced Notes:

You might also see 하여 instead of 해 in some situations, such as books. This is an older form of 하. Don't use it yourself in spoken Korean, but know what it means when you see it.

If the verb ends in 되다, or if the verb is just 되다, you have two options. First, you could conjugate it normally using the basic rule.

되다 → 되  
되 + 어 → 되어  
→ 되어요

Or, 되다 can simply become 됩.

되다 → 돼  
→ 됩

Although either one is correct, 됩 is definitely the more popular choice.

#### Advanced Notes:

돼 comes from a combination of the diphthong ㅟ and the vowel ㅣ. Imagine ㅣ attaching itself on the right side of ㅟ, and you'd get 돼

#### Rule 10: 이다 and 아니다

It's best to simply memorize how these verbs conjugate in the 요 form.

이다 → 이에요 or 예요

아니다 → 아니에요

이다 becomes 이에요 when following a consonant, or 예요 when following a vowel.

저는 미국 사람이에요.  
"I am an American."

저는 남자에요.  
"I am a man."

아니다 simply becomes 아니에요.

저는 한국 ~~사람~~ 아니에요.  
"I am not a Korean."

Remember that 아니다 is used together with the Subject Marker (이/가).

### Advanced Notes:

A common mistakes that native Korean speakers will make is writing 예요 as 에요. This is because예요 when spoken in conversation is actually pronounced 예요 – this is much easier to say.

### Rule 11: Irregular Verbs

There is no Rule 11, but Korean does have many irregular verbs which have their own way of conjugating. A few examples I gave specifically are 하다, 되다, 이다, and 아니다, but there are others too.

Instead of teaching every single additional irregular verb in this book, it's best to go out and learn them on your own. I've covered some of them already, and I will be covering more in the future.

Don't be afraid of a few verbs not conforming to the rules. The vast majority of verbs do follow the rules, but there are some here and there that do not.

Learn these rules as well as you possibly can before continuing on. Knowing how to conjugate the 요 form correctly is one of the most commonly needed skills to have in speaking Korean.

Now that we've got all of that out of the way, let's go over the conversation.

### Advanced Notes:

Although we won't learn it in this book, you will come across spoken and written Korean verbs that are conjugated in this same way, but simply lack the 요 at the end. This is known as casual Korean, and is not polite or formal. However, it's a bit tricky to work with; in order to avoid offending people and being rude, you need to know exactly when it is okay and not okay to use casual Korean. Be aware of its existence, and don't be offended if you hear it, but avoid using it for the time being.

조지: 안녕하세요!  
"Hello!"

## Common Greetings

Even in informal Korean, some greetings will stay the same because they are so common, such as 안녕하세요.

Other greetings may change, such as 안녕히 가세요 and 안녕히 계세요.

The informal version of 안녕히 가세요 is 잘 가요 ("Go well").

There are a few informal versions of 안녕히 계세요, one of which is 댜 갈 게요 ("I'll go first."). The grammar used in this form has not been covered yet, but simply memorizing this phrase is sufficient for now.

Another important greeting to know is 여보세요, which means "hello" when answering the phone.

여보세요 is used to get the other person's attention, just like "hello?" is asked when answering the phone in English. As such, it can also be used to get someone's attention in a public place – perhaps if someone dropped their wallet.

여보세요?  
"Hello?" (on the phone)

여보세요?  
"Excuse me?" ("Hello?" to someone in public)

임이랑: 안녕하세요! 아, 혹시 한국 사람이에요?  
"Hello! Ah, by chance are you a Korean?"

### The Adverb 혹시



혹시 is an adverb that means "by chance," and can be used to soften the tone of a question.

혹시 차가 있어요?  
"Do you have a car by chance?"

그분이 혹시 ~~유명~~ 사람이에요?  
"Is he by chance a famous person?"

혹시... 저에게 ~~돈~~ 조금 ~~줄~~ 있어요?  
"By chance... can you give a little money to me?"

조지: 아니에요. 저는 미국 사람이에요.  
"I'm not. I am an American."

Remember that 아니에요 is different from 아니요 – which simply means "no." Using 아니에요 here is in response to the previous question. In this case, saying just 아니에요 is a shorter way of saying 한국 사람 아니에요.

임이랑: 정말요? 한국어도 할수 있어요?  
"Really? Can you speak Korean too?"

### Ending Sentences Using (이)요

In the above sentence we have 정말요, which is 정말("really") combined with 요. Simply ending the question with 정말 on its own would be impolite when speaking to older people. Even for informal Korean like we're learning, it's important to not be rude. If there is no verb at the end of the sentence, or you're not using 은요 or 는요 (which we covered in Chapter 7), add (이)요 to the end to make the sentence sound more polite.

Add 요 if the last word ends in a vowel, or 이요 if it ends in a consonant.

저요?

"Me?"

저요.

"Me."

한뽕요.

"Hangul."

김 씨요?

"Mr. Kim?"

가방요.

"(A/The) bag."

Remember that using (이)요 is different from using 은요 or 는요.

저는요?

"How about me?"

김 씨는요?

"What about Mr. Kim?"

조지: 네미국 사람이지만 한국어를 조금 해요. 하지만 완벽하지 않아요.  
"Yes, I am an American but I can speak a little Korean. But I'm not perfect."

As mentioned in Chapter 12, adding 하다 ("to do") after a language is a common way to express that you can speak it.

저도 한국어를 해요.  
"I speak Korean too."

Using 하다 in this way is actually an abbreviation of **말을** 하다 ("to speak").

### Practice

Complete the following exercises using informal Korean.

Conjugate the following verbs:

1. 타
2. 팔
3. 내다
4. 팔다
5. 파
6. 수영하다
7. 선생님이 되다
8. 뛰다
9. 땀다
10. 아니다
11. 췌

Translate to Korean:



12. "By chance can you speak English?"

13. "I dry my clothes at home."

14. "Where does Mr. Kim eat lunch?"

15. "I don't know. I'm not meeting him today."

Translate to English:

16. 화젠 어디있어요?

17. 저는 폐를 켜요.

18. 과학선생님을 뵙죠?

19. 안 뵙죠. 뭘 하지만 조금 이한 켜예요.

### New Phrases

잘 가요. - "Go well."

먼 겹요. - "I'll go first."

여보세요? - "Hello?" (on the phone)

### New Vocabulary

완다 - "to be perfect"

이한다 - "to be strange"

묻 - "to inquire"

끄 - "to turn off"

켜 - "to turn on"

뿌다 - "to spread (on)," "to apply"

말다 - "to (make) dry," "to dry (something)"

피부 "skin"

편 "lotion"

항 "always" (adverb)

먼 - "first (before anything/anyone else)" (adverb)

첫 "first" (noun)

첫 "first" (adjective)

첫인상 "first impression"

인상 "impression"

끝 "last" (noun)

가끔 "sometimes" (adverb)

자주 - "often" (adverb)

때때로 "from time to time" (adverb)

혹시 - "by chance" (adverb)

특히 - "especially" (adverb)

## Chapter 20: Past Tense

Using the 요 form we learned in the last chapter, this lesson will cover how to speak using the past tense.

### Conversation



A: 철수 씨가 어메 있어요?

B: 아메서 공부.

A: 왜 메 됐요? 수메 이미 끝나지 않았요?

B: 아니요. 메도 수메 있어요.

A: 철수 씨가 그 수올 왜 선택했요?

B: 그 수메 예뻐자 뽕 때문에 선택했요.

Make sure you've got a good grasp of conjugating the 요 form, which we covered in Chapter 19, before beginning this chapter. Fortunately, things get a bit easier now that you're able to conjugate the 요 form. This chapter will cover how to make the past tense.

### Past Tense

Up until now, everything we've learned has been only in the present

tense. The present tense is used to describe things that are currently happening in the present.

저는 ~~학교~~ 갑니다.  
저는 ~~학교~~ 가요.  
"I go to school."

In this chapter we'll learn how to make the past tense. The past tense is used to describe things that have happened in the past.

The steps to conjugating the past tense are as so:

1. Conjugate the verb to the 요 form.
2. Remove the 요.
3. Attach ㅜ to the bottom.
4. Attach 습니다/습니까 or 어요, depending on politeness.

For step 4, you can attach 습니다 (or 습니까?) to speak formally, or attach 어요 to speak informally.

공부하다 → 공부  
공부하 - 요 → 공부하  
공부하 ㅜ → 공부했  
→ 공부했습니다 or 공부했어요

Let's look at another example.

놀다 → 놀아요  
놀아요 - 요 → 놀아  
놀아 + ㅜ → 놀았  
→ 놀았습니다 or 놀았어요

Here's an example using the verb 어떻다 – "to be how."

어떻다 → 어때요  
어때요 – 요 → 어때  
어때 + 스 → 어땀  
→ 어땀니까? or 어땀어요?

And here's an example with a descriptive verb. The steps for turning it into the past tense form are the same.

덥다 → 더워요  
더워 – 요 → 더워  
더워 + 스 → 더웠  
→ 더웠습니다 or 더웠어요

If you know how to conjugate the 요 form, turning present tense into past tense is simple.

저는 학교에 갑니다.  
저는 학교에 갔어요.  
"I went to school."

이다 and 아니다

There is one additional rule to consider when conjugating the past tense, and it applies to the verbs 이다 and 아니다. It's best to simply memorize these.

이다 becomes 이었습니다 or이었어요 when following a consonant, and 였습니다 or 였어요 when following a vowel.

After a consonant:

이다 → 이었습니다 or이었어요

저는 **행**이었습니다.  
저는 **행**이었어요.  
"I was a student."

After a vowel:

이다 → **였**습니다 or **였**어요

저는 **박**했습니다.  
저는 **박**했어요.  
"I was a doctor."

아니다 becomes **아니**었습니다 or **아니**었어요, regardless of whether it comes after a consonant or vowel.

아니다 → **아니**었습니다 or **아니**었어요

저는 **행**이 **아니**었습니다.  
저는 **행**이 **아니**었어요.  
"I was not a student."

Now that we can correctly conjugate the past tense, let's go over the conversation.

A: **철수** 씨가 **어**때 **있**어요?  
"Where is Chul-soo?"

Remember that when asking questions, it's most common to mark the subject of that sentence (whoever or whatever it is that you are specifically asking about) with the Subject Marker – in this case, the subject of this question is **철수** 씨.

More on **에** 있다

So far we've been able to express that something is "at," or "in" somewhere, or is going "to" somewhere by using the particle **에** with the verb **있다**. But English has prepositions – "The book is under the desk," "I am in front of the house," or "We're outside the school." Korean also has these kinds of words, but they're actually called postpositions – "post" because they are used after, instead of before what you are referring to. They're simple to use. Let's look at the most standard, and common postpositions.

**위** "above," "on (top of)"

**책은 책위에 있어요.**

"The book is on top of the desk."

**밑** "underneath"

**고양이는 제 차 밑에 있어요.**

"The cat is underneath my car."

**앞** "in front of"

**저 앞에 있어요.**

"It's in front of me."

**뒤** "behind," "after"

**원숭이는 개뒤에 있어요.**

"The monkey is behind the dog."

**옆** "beside," "(right) next to"

**제 친구는 저 옆에 있어요.**

"My friend is next to me."

안 "inside"

아이는 집안에 있어요.  
"The child is inside the house."

밖 "outside"

워는 학교밖에 있어요.  
"We are outside the school."

B: 아마학교에서 공부요.  
"Maybe he's studying at school."

You can express "maybe" or "probably" in Korean with the adverb 아마 (도) – the 도 is optional, and if used makes the meaning stronger. You can think of 아마 as meaning "maybe" or "probably," and think of 아마도 as meaning "maybe" or "probably."

Although in English, "maybe" and "probably" express two different possibilities, in Korean they are the same; 아마(도) can be used to mean both.

The above sentence could therefore also translate as, "He's probably studying at school."

A: 왜 학교 갔어요? 수업 이미 끝나지 않았어요?  
"Why did he go to school? Didn't classes already finish?"

### Notes on Sentence Order

Let's take a look at the following two sentences:

- A. 왜 학교 갔어요?
- B. 학교 왜 갔어요?



**"Why did he go to school?"**

Both of the above two sentences are correct, and have the same meaning. However, there is a difference between them.

Sentence A uses a question word (왜, 언제, 어디, 누구/누가, 어떻게, etc.) at the beginning of the sentence.

Sentence B uses a question word as an adverb, right before the verb.

The easiest way to know how these two sentences are different is by looking at sentence B. Using a question word directly before a verb adds more emphasis to the question word.

**왜 학교에 갔어요?**

**"Why did he go to school?"**

Using a question word at the beginning of a sentence adds no additional emphasis.

**왜 학교에 갔어요?**

**"Why did he go to school?"**

Let's take a look at a couple of different examples.

**어디에서 숙제를 해요?**

**"Where are you doing homework at?"**

**숙제를 어디에서 해요?**

**"Where are you doing homework at?"**

**누가 병원에 갔어요?**

**"Who went to the hospital?"**

병원에 누가 갔어요?  
"Who went to the hospital?"

언제 밥을 뭇어요?  
"When did you eat?"

밥을 언제 뭇어요?  
"When did you eat?"

Remember that both usages are correct, and both can be used. Don't worry about making mistakes with this. When in doubt, use question words at the beginning of a sentence or phrase.

### 잘생기다

Previously in Chapter 10 we learned to only use 잘생기다 as an adjective – 잘생긴. Now we can use it at the end of a sentence too.

This verb is an exception, and must be conjugated in the past tense to be used at the end of a sentence.

저 ~~놈~~ 잘생겼어요.  
"That man over there is handsome."

제가 잘생겼어요?  
"Am I handsome?"

### 끝나다 and 끝내다

Before finishing the conversation, we need to cover how to use the verbs 끝나다 and 끝내다. The same concepts that apply to these two verbs will apply to numerous other verbs that you will come across in the future. Let's go over each of them first.

**끝나다** means "to be finish," "to end," or "to be over." It can be used with a variety of markers.

**수업 끝났어요.**  
"Class is over."

**수업을 끝났어요.**  
"As for the class, it's over."

**수업도 끝났어요.**  
"Even the class is over."

**끝내다** means "to finish (something)," or "to end (something)." It can also be used with a variety of markers.

**책을 끝냈어요.**  
"I finished the homework."

**철수 씨가 시험을 끝냈어요.**  
"Chul-soo finished the test."

Can you tell how **끝나다** and **끝내다** are different? **끝나다** refers to something finishing, and **끝내다** refers to someone finishing something. They are certainly different. For example, the following sentence is incorrect:

**책을 끝냈어요.**

Since **끝나다** means "to be finished," this would not translate. **끝나다** does not indicate an action, but something finishing, and does not need an object. The following sentence is also incorrect:

**책이 끝났어요.**

Since the Subject Marker shows the subject of a sentence (here, who or what that is doing the verb), using it after **책** would imply that "homework" is finishing something. If "homework" starts to finish things, it's time to start running for your life (or stop drinking).

However, the following sentence would be correct:

**책은 끝났어요.**

"As for homework, it's finished."

In addition, this sentence would also be correct:

**책은 끝냈어요.**

"As for homework, I finished it."

And these two sentences as well would be correct:

**책도 끝났어요.**

"I also finished the homework."

**책도 끝냈어요.**

"The homework is finished too."

It's important to distinguish whether a verb indicates that something is being done (**끝나다**), or indicating that someone or something is doing something (**끝내다**). Knowing this difference will help you learn new verbs in the future, such as **움이다** and **움다** – verbs that indicate physical movement.

**박스 옮겼어요.**

"The box moved."

**제가 박스를 옮겼어요.**

"I moved the box."

Now let's continue the conversation.

B: 아니요. **밤**도 수업이 있어요.  
"No. He has class at night also."

More than one particle can appear after a noun, such as **에** and **도** in the above sentence. However, particles that indicate direction, such as **에** or **에게**, must come first. Particles such as **도** or **만**, if used, must come after.

Here are some more basic examples.

저에게도 주세요.  
"Please give it to me too."

한국에만 가고 싶어요.  
"I only want to go to Korea."

김 씨에게는 주고 싶지 않아요.  
"As for Mr. Kim, I don't want to give it to him."

However, the Subject Marker cannot be used after a particle that indicates direction (such as **에** and **에게**). The following sentence would be incorrect:

저에게가 주세요.

To be safe, if you are not certain how to combine particles, experiment only using combinations which you have seen used before. Some will be more common than others, such as the above examples.

A: 철수 씨가 그 수업을 왜 선택했요?  
"Why did Chul-soo choose that class?"

In the above sentence, remember that 왜 is being emphasized since it appears directly before the verb.

B: 그 수업에 예쁜여자 많기 때문에 선했어요.  
"He chose it because there are many pretty girls in that class."

### "To Wear"



Expressing "to wear" can be a bit complicated in Korean at first glance, as there are multiple verbs that can all translate as "to wear" depending on where it is being worn. Let's go over a few of the most common ones.

For general items such as shirts and pants, use the verb 입다.

셔츠를 입다

"to wear a shirt"

바지를 입다

"to wear pants"

For items you can wear on your feet, such as shoes and socks, use the verb 신다.

양말을 신다

"to wear socks"

**신발을 신다**  
"to wear shoes"

**Advanced Notes:**

The verb 신다 is pronounced 신따 and is an exception to the sound change rules.

For items you can wear on your head, use the verb **착**.

**모자를 착**  
"to wear a hat"

You can also use the verb **벗**, "to take off (clothing)" as the opposite of 입다, for any type of clothing worn on the body.

**셔츠를 벗**  
"to take off one's shirt"

**양말을 벗**  
"to take off one's socks"

**모자를 벗**  
"to take off a hat"

Although there are other, less common verbs for expressing "to wear," these are the most important ones to remember for the time being.

**Advanced Notes:**

Two more verbs that you might want to learn are 끼다 and 차다.

For items you wear on your hands, use the verb 끼다.

**장갑을 끼다**  
"to wear gloves"

**반지를 끼다**  
"to wear a ring"

For items you wear on your wrists, use the verb 차다.

목 시계를 차다  
"to wear a wristwatch"

### Culture Notes:



The traditional Korean dress is known as **한복**. There are both male and female styles of **한복**. **한복** can be very expensive, and like a tuxedo, are custom tailored to fit each individual. Nowadays, such clothing is only seen on special occasions, such as in traditional Korean wedding ceremonies.

### Practice

Complete the following exercises using informal Korean in the past tense.

Conjugate the following verbs:

1. 하다
2. 가다
3. 춥다
4. 차갑다
5. 쌀쌀하다
6. 아니다
7. 빠다
8. 짝
9. 가르치다
10. 싸다

Translate to Korean:



11. "I do not want to go to school today."
12. "I did not want to go to school yesterday."
13. "Yesterday I went to the store, and I bought milk and cheese."
14. "From what time did you study?"
15. "From what time, until what time, did you work yesterday?"
16. "Who went to the hospital?"

Translate to English:

17. 제 생일치를 왜 뵈었어요?
18. 누가 제 과를 봤어요?
19. 저는 안 켜만 켜가고 싶었어요.
20. 언제 김 씨를 만났어요? 왜 만났어요?
21. 지난주 내다췌 때문에 뵈를 입었어요.
22. 오늘에서 한국어를 두시간만 뵈 공부했어요.

### New Phrases

행운(을) 뵈요! - "Good luck!"

### New Vocabulary

행운(을) 뵈 - "to wish (someone) good luck"

한복 "Hanbok"

농담 "joke"

농담을 하다 - "to tell a joke," "to joke"

웃다 - "to be humorous," "to be funny"

훔치다 - "to steal"

샌드위치 - "sandwich"

반바지 - "shorts" (literally, "half pants")

바지 - "pants"

코트 "coat"

입다 - "to wear (on body)"

착다 - "to wear (on head)"

신다 - "to wear (on feet)"

끼다 - "to wear (on hands)"

차다 - "to wear (on wrists)"

목시계 - "wristwatch"

반지 - "ring"

벗다 - "to take off (clothing)"

구두 "dress shoes"

아마도 - "maybe," "possibly"

수업 "lesson," "course," "class"

끝나다 - "to be finished," "to end," "to be over"

끝내다 - "to finish (something)," "to end (something)"

끝 - "the end"

시작을 하다 - "to begin," "to start"

선택을 하다 - "to choose," "to select"

움직이다 - "to move"

옮기다 - "to move (something)"

책상 "desk," "(writing) table"

가구 - "furniture"

유리 - "glass"

등 - "lamp"

과거 - "the past"

현재 - "the present"

미래 - "the future"

위 - "above," "on top of"  
밑 - "underneath"  
앞 - "in front of"  
뒤 - "behind," "after"  
옆 - "beside," "(right) next to"  
안 - "inside"  
밖 - "outside"  
중 "center"  
광 - "advertisement"  
광에 빠지다 - "to fall in love"  
열심히 - "diligently," "hard" (adverb)  
예 - "(just) as expected" (adverb)  
갑자기 - "all of the sudden," "suddenly" (adverb)  
매일 - "every day"  
매주 - "every week"  
매월 - "every month"  
매년 "every year"  
작년 "last year"  
올해 "this year"  
내년 "next year"

# Answer Keys

## Chapter 1

- a) 안녕하세요.
- b) 안녕하세요. 저는 철수입니다.
- c) 저는 영희입니다. 만나서 뵙습니다.
- d) 네(만나서) 뵙습니다.
- e) 안녕히 가세요.
- f) 안녕히 계세요.
- g) "Hello. I am Chul-soo. Nice to meet you. Goodbye."
- h) 안녕하세요. (만나서) 뵙습니다. 저는 [your name]입니다. 안녕히 계세요.

## Chapter 2

- 4) Hello. I am Chul-soo. I like music. I dislike dance."
- 5) 저는 ~~춤~~을 ~~좋~~합니다. ~~미~~를 ~~싫~~합니다. 수영을 ~~싫~~합니다.

## Chapter 3

- 1) "I like cats more."
- 2) "I like dogs more."
- 3) 저는 영화를 ~~좋~~합니다.
- 4) 저는 ~~춤~~ 더 ~~좋~~합니다.
- 5) 저는 ~~바람~~ ~~싫~~합니다.
- 6) 저는 거미를 더 ~~싫~~합니다.

## Chapter 4

- 1) "I want to eat tomatoes too."
- 2) "I want to eat only tomatoes."
- 3) "I also want to earn money."

- 4) "Only I want to earn money."
- 5) 저만 김치를 ~~먹~~합니다.
- 6) 저는 김치만 ~~먹~~합니다.
- 7) 저도 ~~먹~~ 먹고 싶습니다.
- 8) 저는 ~~먹~~ 먹고 싶습니다.

## Chapter 5

- 1) 저는 ~~놀이~~에 갑니다.
- 2) 저는 ~~놀이~~에 뭘다.
- 3) 저는 ~~놀이~~ 가고 싶습니다.
- 4) 저는 놀고 싶습니다.
- 5) "I play games."
- 6) "I go to the museum."
- 7) "I go to the beach."
- 8) "I want to eat cheese too."

## Chapter 6

- 1) "I'm going to Europe now."
- 2) "I have a cell phone."
- 3) "I have a car in America."
- 4) "I want to go to Korea, but I also want to go to America."
- 5) 저는 한국에 갑니다.
- 6) 저는 지금 미국에 갑니다.
- 7) 저는 ~~김치~~가 있습니다.
- 8) 한국에 김치가 있습니다.
- 9) 미국에 미국 ~~김치~~ 있습니다.
- 10) 저는 영국에 가고 싶지만 한국에도 가고 싶습니다.

## Chapter 7

- 1) "Mr. Kim Chul-soo and Mrs. Kim Yung-hee are Koreans."
- 2) "I love kimchi and pork belly."

- 3) "I really like math."
- 4) "How about Mr. Kim Chul-soo?"
- 5) "What do you want to eat?"
- 6) "What do you do these days?"
- 7) 안녕하세요. 잘 지내세요?
- 8) 저도 미국 **재민**니다.
- 9) 김철수 씨는 **정한국** **재민**니다.
- 10) 저는 **책**을 **읽**하지만 **수화** **과**를 **듣**합니다.
- 11) **뭘** 하고 싶습니까?
- 12) **과**는 **요**?
- 13) **원숭**을 **랑**합니까?

## Chapter 8

- 1) "I'm going to eat."
- 2) "Where is Mr. Kim going today?"
- 3) "We are walking to school."
- 4) "I'm going to work."
- 5) "Where is the bathroom?"
- 6) **백**이 누구입니까?
- 7) 누구를 **랑**합니까?
- 8) **워**는 가고 싶습니다.
- 9) 언제 **밥**을 **먹** 싶습니까?
- 10) **집** **어**에 있습니까?

## Chapter 9

- 1) descriptive verb
- 2) action verb
- 3) descriptive verb
- 4) action verb
- 5) action verb
- 6) descriptive verb
- 7) "Mr. Kim really drinks a lot of alcohol."

- 8) "Today I am a little cold."
- 9) "Is the water cold?"
- 10) 수돗물 조금 차갑습니다.
- 11) 오늘 아주 춥습니다.
- 12) 저는 한국을 정말 좋아합니다.

## Chapter 10

- 1) "What kind of person is Mr. Kim Chul-soo?"
- 2) "What kind of movies do you like?"
- 3) "I like entertaining movies."
- 4) "Do you want to eat spicy food?"
- 5) "Do you like short movies?"
- 6) "I dislike that kind of movie."
- 7) "Today I'll go to school and do homework."
- 8) 제가 어떤 사람입니까?
- 9) 저는 그런 영화를 싫어합니다.
- 10) 제가 좋은 영화를 좋아합니다.
- 11) 예쁜 여자가 어디 있습니까?
- 12) 김영희 씨가 아주 예뻐요.
- 13) 긴 영화를 좋아하십니까?
- 14) 아니요. 저는 짧은 재미있는 영화를 좋아합니다.

## Chapter 11

- 1) "I want a black bag."
- 2) "That house is big."
- 3) "My face is red."
- 4) "That far mountain is green."
- 5) "My house is here."
- 6) "This is the same as that."
- 7) "Is Mr. Kim Chul-soo the same person as that man?"
- 8) 저는 책꽂이를 새로 샀습니다.
- 9) 저의 옷 색깔이 좋습니다.

- 10) 고양이는 **웁니다**.
- 11) 저는 거기에 가고 싶습니다.
- 12) 이 영화가 재미있습니다.
- 13) 이 **뽕** 그 **뽕** **깁니다**.
- 14) 그 **썩** 저의 **썩** **뽕니다**.

## Chapter 12

1. **쇼**
2. 이 **쇼**
3. **썩**
4. 구 **쇼**
5. 백일
6. 삼백삼삼
7. 오백
8. **썩**
9. 구천
10. 만백 **썩**
11. 오만오백
12. 구 **썩**
13. 백만
14. 저는 **썩**이 있습니다.
15. 이 고양이가 **웁니까**?
16. 저는 **썩** 있기 때문에 기쁩다.
17. 저의 **썩**분에 기쁩다.
18. 이 **썩**가 그렇게 어썩니까?
19. "How much is that?"
20. "I have 19,000 Won."
21. "I am sad because I have homework."
22. "Today I am sad because of my homework."
23. "Is it really that easy?"

## Chapter 13



- a) 하나
- b) 둘
- c) 셋
- d) 넷
- e) 다섯
- f) 여섯
- g) 일곱
- h) 여덟
- i) 아홉
- j) 열
- k) 열
- l) 열두
- m) 열일곱
- n) 서른

- 1) 저는 원숭이 열두마리를 보고 싶습니다.
- 2) 쥘레 주세요
- 3) 저의 집 뒤에 있습니다.
- 4) 그분은 서른살입니다.
- 5) 그분은 몇살입니까?
- 6) 저는 집에서 가게까지 열걸립니다.
- 7) 그제저 열에 왜니까?
- 8) 쥘레 저의 잔을 데리고 갑니다.
- 9) 한국 쥘레라고요?
- 10) 이제 그것보다 더 좋습니다.
- 11) "I want to eat two cows."
- 12) "One person is coming."
- 13) "I am 18 years old."
- 14) "I'm driving from Seoul to Busan."
- 15) "How many cats are there?"
- 16) "That is really a fish."
- 17) "My house is bigger than Mr. Kim's house."
- 18) "Give me only one sheet of paper."
- 19) "He is bringing presents too."

20) "Did you say presents?"

21) "Because this cat is cuter than that cat, I like this cat more."

## Chapter 14

1) 오늘저는 **화재** 안 갑니다.

2) 그분은 **병원**에 가지 않습니다.

3) 저의 **집** 안 뭘까?

4) 그분은 **화재** 없습니다.

5) 저는 그분을 **뵙**다.

6) 저는 **빨** 수영할수 있습니다.

7) 저와 함께 **파** 가고 싶습니까?

8) 저는 한국 **사람** 아닙니다.

9) "Why aren't you going to the hospital?"

10) "Are you really not doing your homework?"

11) "I don't want to go to school."

12) "I don't want to eat beef because I dislike it."

13) "Do you know Mrs. Yung-hee?"

14) "No. I don't know Mrs. Yung-hee."

15) "I'm not an English person."

16) "I can't go to the park with Mrs. Yung-hee because I don't have money."

## Chapter 15

1) "I am not a Chinese person."

2) "Mr. Kim is a friendly Korean man."

3) "When it comes to cities, Seoul is the best."

4) "My name is Kim Chul-soo."

5) "Do you want to study at school today?"

6) "I really want to go to the movie theater."

7) 김 씨는 나이가 어떻게 됩니까?

8) 저는 **빨** **뵙**합니다.

9) 저는 차가운 **파**를 **먹** 싶지 않습니다.

- 10) 저는 [your name](이)라고 합니다.
- 11) ~~취~~가 어떻게 됩니까?
- 12) 저는 ~~짬~~서 ~~췌~~를 하고 싶습니다.

## Chapter 16

- 1) 오 ~~후~~한 시
- 2) 아 ~~침~~한 시
- 3) 저 ~~녁~~여섯시
- 4) ~~새~~시
- 5) 아 ~~침~~여덟시
- 6) 세 시간
- 7) 두 ~~시~~간 ~~의~~ 분
- 8) ~~십~~초
- 9) 삼일
- 10) 이 주일
- 11) ~~팔~~월
- 12) 십년
- 13) 일월
- 14) 이월
- 15) 삼월
- 16) ~~월~~
- 17) 오월
- 18) ~~월~~
- 19) ~~월~~
- 20) ~~월~~
- 21) 구월
- 22) 시월
- 23) ~~월~~월
- 24) ~~월~~월
- 25) 월요일
- 26) 화요일
- 27) 수요일
- 28) 목요일

- 29) 금요일
- 30) 토요일
- 31) 일요일
- 32) "I want to go to Korea in January."
- 33) "I'm at school from 9 o'clock in the morning until 11 o'clock in the evening."
- 34) "Tomorrow is June 15th."
- 35) "I'm meeting Mr. Kim at 1 o'clock P.M.."
- 36) "Can you go to the party on Tuesday?"
- 37) "Do you have time this week?"
- 38) 몇시입니까?
- 39) ~~몇월~~니까?
- 40) 저는 ~~몇월~~을 ~~랑~~합니다. ~~몇월~~이 최고입니다.
- 41) 저도 김 씨를 보고 싶습니다.
- 42) ~~오늘~~month) (day), (year)입니다.
- 43) 내일 금요일입니다.

## Chapter 17

- 1) ~~첸~~
- 2) ~~일불~~
- 3) ~~일불오첸~~
- 4) ~~오늘이오~~전
- 5) ~~몇월~~전
- 6) ~~이~~ ~~삼삼삼~~전
- 7) ~~삼~~ 주세요.
- 8) ~~왜~~하세요.
- 9) 저의 차가 안 됩니다.
- 10) 저는 의짜 되고 싶습니다.
- 11) ~~밖~~에서 ~~올~~ 세요.
- 12) "Please give me a little more money."
- 13) "Why do you not want to become a teacher?"
- 14) "I learn Korean from Mr. Kim."
- 15) "How is Korean food? Is it delicious?"

16) "Do your homework quickly."

## Chapter 18

- 1) 형 or 오빠
- 2) 누나 or 언니
- 3) 뽕
- 4) 여뽕
- 5) 저도 ~~가~~ 께 있습니다.
- 6) 김 씨는 가꿔 어떻게 됩니까?
- 7) 저는 어빠를 ~~정~~랑합니다.
- 8) 저의 (누나/언니)와 함께 ~~환~~고 싶습니다.
- 9) "My brother also dislikes kimchi."
- 10) "My older sister is a famous singer."
- 11) "Today I'm meeting my older sister at school."
- 12) "Why do you hate my older brother?"

## Chapter 19

- 1) 쇼
- 2) 팔요
- 3) 내요
- 4) 켜워요
- 5) 켜
- 6) 수영췌
- 7) 선생님이 췌
- 8) 랍요
- 9) 딸
- 10) 아니에요
- 11) 췌
- 12) 혹시 영어를 할수 있어요?
- 13) 저는 췌서 을 딸.
- 14) 김 씨가 어에서 췌를 췌요?
- 15) 랍요. 오늘만 만나요.

- 16) "Where is the bathroom?"
- 17) "I apply lotion on my skin."
- 18) "Do you like the science teacher?"
- 19) "I don't like him/her. He/she's smart, but kind of a strange person."

## Chapter 20

- 1) 했어요
- 2) 됐어요
- 3) 주었어요
- 4) 차가웠어요
- 5) 팔았어요
- 6) 아니었어요
- 7) 닮았어요
- 8) 잤어요
- 9) 가르쳤어요
- 10) 배웠어요
- 11) 오늘에 가고 싶지 않아요.
- 12) 어제에 가고 싶지 않았어요.
- 13) 어제 제가 가게에 갔, 우유 치를 샀어요.
- 14) 몇시부터 공부했어요?
- 15) 어제 몇시부터 몇시까지 일했어요?
- 16) 누가 뭘에 썼어요?
- 17) "Why did you eat my sandwich?"
- 18) "Who stole my pizza?"
- 19) "I didn't go, but I really wanted to go."
- 20) "When did you meet Mr. Kim? Why did you meet him?"
- 21) "Because it was too hot last week I wore shorts."
- 22) "Today I studied Korean hard at home for 2 hours."

## Appendix A. – Typing in Korean

In addition to being able to write in Korean, you may want to be able to type in Korean. While this book is not a complete guide on doing this, take a look at the image below which shows the layout of a typical Korean keyboard as a quick reference.

Switching your computer's keyboard to Korean is something you can easily look up how to do online. I also recommend purchasing some 한글 stickers to put on your keyboard, as they're inexpensive and can be helpful for becoming adjusted to the layout.

Q	ㅊ	W	ㅈ	E	ㅊ	R	ㄱ	T	ㅈ	Y		U		I		O	ㅊ	P	ㅊ
	ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ
A		S		D		F		G		H		J		K		L			
	ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ
Z		X		C		V		B		N		M							
	ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ		ㅅ

One thing you might notice right away is how the consonants are on the left of the keyboard, and vowels are on the right. In addition, the bottom row contains strong consonants.

Typing a syllable is done by typing the individual letters in order from left to right, and top to bottom, just as they would be pronounced. For example, **ㄱㅅ** is made by first typing **ㄱ**, then **ㅅ**, and finally **ㅅ** (this corresponds to "r," "k," and "s" on the keyboard, so typing "rks" will become **ㄱㅅ**).

In order to type the letter on the top of the key, such as typing **ㅊ** instead of **ㅅ** (top left), hold down the Shift key. Switching between English and Korean input can be done using the right Alt key (or 한글/영 key, if you have a Korean keyboard).

Diphthongs are created by typing two vowels – the first being the horizontal vowel, and the second being the vertical vowel. For example, —| would be made by first typing —, followed by |.

Other than that, the rest should be self explanatory. While I don't recommend learning to type until you're able to write, once you've got the basics down, feel free to practice using a computer.



## **Appendix B. – Hangul Chart and Names of Letters**

Use the following chart for reference purposes only. Although it correctly shows every possible single consonant and single vowel combination in Korean (note that it does not include syllables with 3 letters or more), many of the combinations below will not be found in modern Korean. Nevertheless, it will benefit you to be able to know how to write and read any of the following combinations below; pronouncing some of them (ones that aren't used) might be difficult, even for native Korean speakers.

○	ㄱ	ㄴ	ㄷ	ㄹ	ㅁ	ㅂ	ㅅ	ㅇ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅎ	가	다	ㅂㅅ	ㅅㅅ	ㅈㅈ
ㅏ	가	나	다	라	마	바	사	아	자	차	카	타	파	하	가	다	ㅂㅅ	ㅅㅅ	ㅈㅈ
ㅑ	갸	냐	댜	랴	먀	뵤	샤	야	쟈	챤	캬	탸	팸	햐	갸	댜	뵤	샤	쟈
ㅓ	거	너	더	러	머	버	서	어	저	처	커	터	퍼	허	꺼	떠	뵤	씨	져
ㅕ	겨	녀	뎌	려	며	뵤	셔	여	ژه	쳐	켜	터	펴	혀	껴	뎌	뵤	셔	ژه
ㅗ	고	노	도	로	모	보	소	오	조	초	코	토	포	호	고	도	뵤	쏘	쫐
ㅛ	교	뇨	됴	료	묘	뵤	쇼	요	쫐	쫐	쿄	톸	표	효	교	됴	뵤	쇼	쫐
ㅜ	구	누	두	루	무	부	수	우	주	추	쿠	투	푸	후	꾸	뚜	뵤	쑤	쫐
ㅠ	규	뉴	듀	류	뮤	뵤	슈	유	쫐	쫐	큐	튜	퓨	휴	규	듀	뵤	슈	쫐
ㅡ	그	느	드	르	므	브	스	으	즈	츠	크	트	프	흐	그	드	뵤	쓰	쯔
ㅣ	기	니	디	리	미	비	시	이	지	치	키	티	피	히	기	디	뵤	씨	찌
ㅞ	개	내	대	래	매	배	새	애	재	채	캐	태	패	해	개	대	뵤	새	재
ㅟ	개	내	대	래	매	배	새	애	재	채	캐	태	패	해	개	대	뵤	새	재
ㅠ	게	네	데	레	메	베	세	에	제	체	케	테	페	헤	게	데	뵤	세	제
ㅡ	계	네	데	레	메	베	세	예	제	체	케	테	페	헤	계	데	뵤	세	제
ㅢ	과	놔	돗	랴	뵤	뵤	쇄	와	좌	좌	과	톸	팸	화	과	돗	뵤	쇄	좌
ㅣ	괘	눠	돼	래	뵤	뵤	쇄	와	좌	좌	괘	톸	팸	화	괘	돼	뵤	쇄	좌
ㅤ	괴	놔	돗	랴	뵤	뵤	쇄	외	죄	죄	괴	톸	팸	회	괴	돗	뵤	쇄	죄
ㅦ	귀	늬	뵤	뤼	뵤	뵤	쑤	위	쫐	쫐	퀴	튜	푤	휘	귀	뵤	뵤	쑤	쫐
ㅨ	괘	늬	뵤	뤼	뵤	뵤	쑤	웨	쫐	쫐	퀘	툼	푤	웨	괘	뵤	뵤	쑤	쫐
ㅩ	귀	늬	뵤	뤼	뵤	뵤	쑤	위	쫐	쫐	퀴	툼	푤	휘	귀	뵤	뵤	쑤	쫐
ㅪ	그	느	드	르	므	브	스	으	즈	츠	크	트	프	흐	그	드	뵤	쓰	쯔

It's also important to know the names of the consonants in Korean. These will be useful when spelling Korean words. Fortunately, most of them work in the same format (consonant + ㅣ + 으 + consonant), as you will find below. I've marked the three consonants that have their own unique names with asterisks.

Letter → Name

\*ㄱ → 기역

ㄴ → 니은

\*ㄷ → 뎡

ㄹ → 리을

ㅁ → 미음

ㅂ → 뽀

\*ㅅ → 시읏 pronounced 시읏

ㅇ → 이응

ㅈ → 지읏 pronounced 지읏

ㅊ → 치읏 pronounced 치읏

ㅋ → 켜읏 pronounced 켜

ㅌ → 댠읏 pronounced 댠

ㅍ → 뽀읏 pronounced 뽀

ㅎ → 히읏 pronounced 히읏

## Appendix C. – Sound Change Rules

Once you've got the hang of the basic rules regarding **받침** sounds, let's go over some more rules regarding sound changes that take place between syllables.

Although the sound change rules contained in this appendix are not required in order to pronounce individual syllables one at a time, they are necessary when speaking Korean at a normal speed.

Do not stress to memorize every rule contained in this appendix on your first time reading it. There are several rules that you will need to learn, and mastering them will require practicing more than it will require studying. Instead, try to speak slowly at first, and increase your speed as you become more familiar with these rules.

### Base Consonants

In order to start, first we need to learn about base consonants.

"We need to learn more consonants?" No, we don't need to learn any more consonants; we've already learned every letter used in **한글**. We just need to learn what a base consonant is.

The following five consonants are the base consonants that we need to know for the purpose of figuring out how to pronounce words in sentences:

ㄱ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㄷ, ㅌ

You only need to memorize that these 5 consonants make up what we call base consonants. Take a moment to put them in your memory.

Now let's learn our first sound change rule for sounds that take place between syllables.

## 1. Consonant + Base Consonant

This rule applies any time you have a consonant – specifically a base consonant, a double consonant, or a strong consonant – that comes before a base consonant.

Whenever this happens, the second base consonant becomes pronounced like a double consonant.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

화 → 화

땀 → 땀

뜰 → 뜰

찾그 → 찹

왕 → 왕

착 → 찹

땀 → 땀

값 → 갑따

췌 → 찹

뽕 → 뽕

뽕 → 뽕

당 → 뽕

백보 → 백뽕

갑부 → 갑뽕

국수 → 국췌

뽕 → 뽕

This is one of the most commonly used sound change rules, and as such, is at the top of this list.

## 2. Base Consonant + ㅎ

### ㅎ + Base Consonant

This rule applies any time you have a base consonant before ㅎ, or any time you have ㅎ followed by a base consonant.

Whenever this happens, the base consonant becomes pronounced like a strong consonant.

Here are some examples when the base consonant comes after ㅎ:

#### Spelling → Pronunciation

꽤 → 켜  
안다 → 안타  
좌 → 조타  
편 → 편  
만 → 만코  
만 → 만키  
쌍 → 찡

When ㄴ comes after ㅎ, because ㄴ does not have a strong consonant version of itself, it instead becomes pronounced like ㄴ.

#### Spelling → Pronunciation

안소 → 안쏘  
놓 → 노  
울 → 울

Here are some examples when the base consonant comes before ㅎ:

#### Spelling → Pronunciation

화다 → 화  
해다 → 해  
하다 → 하

화 → 카  
환 → 뽀  
하다 → 차파  
하다 → 아파  
백호 → 뽀  
천다\* → 가치다\*

To understand how 천다 becomes pronounced 가치다, see the next rule.

Since ㅅ is normally pronounced like ㅈ at the end of a syllable, when it comes before ㅎ it also behaves like ㅈ. Therefore, when ㅅ comes before ㅎ, it becomes pronounced like ㅉ.

Spelling → Pronunciation

췌 → 뽀  
췌다 → 뽀다

3. ㅉ + ㅅ = ㅊ  
ㅈ + ㅎ = ㅊ  
ㅈ + ㅅ = ㅊ

Whenever you have ㅉ before ㅅ, the ㅅ changes to become ㅊ.

Whenever you have ㅈ before ㅎ, the ㅎ changes to become ㅊ.

Whenever you have ㅈ before ㅅ, the ㅅ changes to become ㅊ.

It might seem strange that this sound change rule exists (changing ㅉ to ㅊ, and changing ㅈ to ㅊ), but there is a similar change in English, although it works a bit differently; notice in English how "train" (ㅉ) is pronounced "ch-rain" (ㅊ), and "drain" (ㅈ) is pronounced "jr-ain" (ㅊ).

Spelling → Pronunciation

천다 → 가치다  
꺠 → 가치  
뽳다 → 뽳다  
뽳 → 꺠  
꺠 → 구지  
맞뽳 → 뽳지  
뽳\* → 꺠\*

Note that 뽳 is pronounced like normal (꺠), as this rule only applies to syllables that use the vowel ㅣ, such as 이 and 히.

However, this rule also applies to 여/혀 as well; both 여 and 혀 become pronounced like 처. This is because 여 is a combination of the sounds 이 and 어, and 혀 is a combination of 히 and 어.

Spelling → Pronunciation

뽳 → 뽳  
꺠 → 가치

#### 4. ㅃ + Base Consonant

This rule is an extension of the first rule.

Whenever you have a base consonant after ㅃ, the base consonant will become a double consonant.

Spelling → Pronunciation

핳 → 핳  
뽳 → 뽳  
열 → 열  
일쳐 → 일쳐  
일세 → 일세

However, this rule does not apply to the base consonant ㅃ.



### Spelling → Pronunciation

물론 → 물론

헬 → 헬

말 → 말

This rule only sometimes applies to the base consonant ㄱ.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

깎루 → 깎루

콧 → 콧

헐 → 헐

얼 → 얼

얼 → 얼

As with any rule there will be exceptions, but we'll learn those as they come up along the way. For example, here's one common exception.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

뿔 → 뿔

## 5. ㅂ/ㅃ + ㄴ/ㄹ

Whenever you have ㅂ or ㅃ before ㄴ or ㄹ, the ㅂ or ㅃ will become pronounced like ㅃ.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

합니다 → 합니다

춥니다 → 가춥니다

잡 → 잡

찰 → 찰

갑년 → 꺾

붙 → 붙

줍 → 줍

밥 ~~ㅅ~~ → 뽕  
입무 → 임무  
엷 → 엷  
엷 → 엷  
몹 → 삼목  
합명 → 함명  
갑문 → 꺾문  
얹 → 얹  
달 → 달  
왓무 → 임나무  
꺾 → 꺾

### Advanced Notes:

ㅅ is absent from this list because there are no syllables in Korean that end with it at the bottom.

### 6. ㅅ + ㅅ

Whenever you have ㅅ before ㅅ, the ㅅ will become pronounced like ㅅ, and the ㅅ becomes pronounced like ㅅ.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

합리 → 함니  
췌 → 췌  
합량 → 함냥  
갑리 → 꺾  
겹리 → 겹  
합류 → 함뉴  
엷 → 엷  
입 뽕 → 임뽕

### 7. ㅅ + ㅅ

Whenever you have ㅅ before ㅅ, the ㅅ becomes pronounced like ㅅ, and the ㅅ becomes pronounced like ㅅ.

## Spelling → Pronunciation

백리 → 뱅

뵙 → 뵙

뵙 → 뵙

뵙 → 뵙

뵙 → 뵙

뵙 → 뵙

## 8. Consonant + ㄴ/ㄹ

Whenever you have a consonant before ㄴ or ㄹ, the consonant will become pronounced like ㄴ or ㄹ, respectively.

This rule does not apply to the consonants ㄱ, ㅋ, ㆁ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㄷ, ㄹ or ㅈ – these each have their own rules for interacting with ㄴ/ㄹ which this appendix covers.

Besides the consonants that this rule does not apply to, here are the consonants that it does apply to: ㅌ, ㄷ, ㅌ, ㅌ, ㅌ, ㅌ, ㅌ, ㅌ, ㅌ, and ㅌ.

## Spelling → Pronunciation

뵙 → 뵙

뵙무 → 뵙무

뵙 → 뵙

맞나 → 만나

젼 → 젼

뵙 → 뵙

뵙 → 뵙

뵙 → 만나

있는 → 인는

뵙 → 뵙더

뵙다 → 뵙다

뵙 → 뵙

ㅍ → 만나  
ㅌ → 뎡  
여췌 → 여췌  
놓 → 논

There is an exception: ㅍ and ㅌ before ㅁ behave differently.

Whenever you have ㅍ or ㅌ before ㅁ, the ㅍ or ㅌ will become pronounced like ㄴ instead.

ㅍㅁ → ㅁㅁ  
ㅌㅁ → 만ㅁ

Fortunately for us, having ㅍ or ㅌ before ㅁ is very rare (whereas having ㅍ or ㅌ before ㄴ is common), which is why this exception does not have its own section.

## 9. ㄱ/ㄴ/ㅇ + ㄴ/ㅁ

Whenever you have ㄱ (or ㄴ/ㅇ) before ㄴ or ㅁ, the ㄱ (or ㄴ/ㅇ) will become pronounced like ㅇ ("ng" at the end of a syllable).

Spelling → Pronunciation

한국말 → 한꺼  
백만 → 뽕  
뽕 → 뽕  
목뽕다 → 뽕다  
국물 → 꺼  
삭 → 상  
꺼 → 꺼  
현 → 형  
꺼 → 꺼  
뽕 → 뽕

## 10. ㅅ + ㅣ / ㅑ / ㅓ / ㅕ / ㅗ / ㅛ / ㅜ

This is an extension of a rule we learned in the "Introduction to Hangul" section of this book, that 시 is pronounced like the English word "she," and not like the English word "see." In addition, when ㅅ comes before the vowels ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, or ㅜ, the ㅅ becomes pronounced like "sh" instead of "s."

Practice reading the following sounds:

시 / 샹 샹 새 새 쇼 슈

This rule exists because the above vowels are combinations of the sounds 시 and ㅗ여, 예, ㅗ요, and 유

This rule does not apply to any other single vowels besides the ones listed above.

### Advanced Notes:

In addition, the diphthongs ㅑ and ㅓ will also produce a sound similar to 시, due to them containing the vowel ㅣ.

## 11. ㅇ / ㅁ + ㄹ

Whenever you have ㅇ or ㅁ before ㄹ, the ㄹ becomes pronounced like ㄴ.

### Spelling → Pronunciation

경 → 강

장 → 장

황 → 황

택 → 택

육 → 육

탐국 → 탐국

생화다 → 생화

An exception to this rule is the word **장** ("genre"), which does not change its pronunciation.

## 12. ㄴ + ㄹ ㄹ + ㄴ

Whenever you have ㄴ before or after ㄹ, the ㄴ becomes pronounced like ㄹ.

Spelling → Pronunciation

환 → 환  
만리 → 맏  
신라 → 째  
괘 → 꺾  
빨 → 뺄  
일년 → 일련  
뿔 → 뿔  
꺾 → 꺾  
월남 → 월람

## 13. Irregulars

Not all words in Korean follow these rules. But take comfort in the fact that most do. Unlike English, where a word's spelling can be completely unrelated to the sound it produces, reading 한글 is mostly straightforward. Although there are words which do not follow the above rules, the majority will. Learn the irregulars as they come up, and don't worry about learning all of them at once.

Here are just a few examples of some common irregulars:

Spelling → Pronunciation

깎 → 꺾

한자→한자

ㅈㅅ→ㅈㅅ

ㅅㅅ→ㅅㅅ

ㅁ\* → ㅁ\*

For syllables ending in ㄹㅎ or ㄴㅎ, and followed by the vowel ㅗ, the ㅎ will become silent.

You will hear the more common irregulars frequently enough to not have to worry about studying them, and the less common ones you can learn as they come up.

## Informal Korean Conversations

This section contains every conversation (excluding Chapter 19 and Chapter 20) from the book re-written using the 요 form. As the 요 form and 니다/니까 forms should be used in their own situations (such as informal or formal situations), these re-written conversations should only be used as practice for familiarizing yourself with the 요 form's conjugation rules. After reading through this book at least once, I recommend coming back here and re-reading each conversation out loud. The more exposure you have to the 요 form, the faster and more accurately you will be able to conjugate it yourself.

Also, all numbers have been re-written using regular numerals; use this for additional practice reading numbers on your own.

### Chapter 1

#### Conversation 1

A: 안녕하세요.

B: 안녕하세요.

A: 안녕히 가세요.

B: 안녕히 계세요.

#### Conversation 2

철수: 안녕하세요.

영희: 안녕하세요.

철수: 저는 철수예요.

영희: 저는 영희예요.

철수: 만나서 뵈워요.

영희: 네뵈워요.

### Chapter 2



### Conversation

A: 저는 **초콜**을 **좋아**해요.

B: 저는 **우유**를 **좋아**해요. **초콜**을 **싫어**해요.

## Chapter 3

### Conversation

철수: 저는 고양이를 **좋아**해요.

영희: 저는 고양이를 **싫어**해요. **개**를 **좋아**해요.

철수: 저는 김치를 **좋아**해요.

영희: 저는 삼겹살을 더 **좋아**해요.

## Chapter 4

### Conversation

김철수: 저는 아르바이트를 **원하**요.

김영희: 저도 아르바이트를 **원하**요.

김철수: 하지만 일을 원하지 않아요. **돈**을 **원하**요.

김영희: 저도 일하고 싶지 않아요. 게임 하고 싶어요.

김철수: 저도 게임 하고 싶어요. 하지만 **돈**을 **원하**요.

## Chapter 5

### Conversation

김철수: 영희 씨, 안녕하세요.

김영희: 안녕하세요. 저는 **학교**에 가요.

김철수: 저는 **집**에 가요.

김영희: 저는 **공원**에 가요.

김철수: 저는 놀아요.

## Chapter 6

### Conversation

A: 저는 한국 ~~책~~에요. 한국에 아~~책~~ 있어요.  
B: 저는 미국 ~~책~~에요. 미국에 ~~책~~ 있어요.  
A: 저는 미국에 가고 싶어요.  
B: 저는 한국에 가고 싶지만 지금 미국에 있어요.

## Chapter 7

### Conversation

김철수: 선생님, 안녕하세요. 잘 지내세요?  
김영희: 아, 네김철수 씨도 잘 지내세요?  
김철수: 네요 ~~즐거움~~ ~~해~~?  
김영희: 저는 ~~행들~~을 가르~~쳐~~.  
김철수: ~~뭘~~ 가르~~쳐~~?  
김영희: 저는 수~~학~~ 과~~학~~ 가르~~쳐~~.  
김철수: 저도 수~~학~~ 과~~학~~ ~~배~~ 싶어요.  
김영희: ~~정~~~~배~~ ~~배~~ 싶어요?  
김철수: 네하지만 ~~책~~와 시~~학~~ ~~생~~~~해~~. 선생님은요?  
김영희: 하하. 저도 ~~책~~와 시~~학~~ ~~생~~~~해~~.

## Chapter 8

### Conversation

A: 언제 밥을 ~~딱~~러 나가요?  
B: 오~~날~~~~배~~ 나가요. 어~~배~~ 가고 싶어요?  
A: 서~~뭘~~ 가고 싶어요. 누가 가요?  
B: 저와 김영희 씨와 김철수 선생님이 가요.  
A: 김철수 선생님이 누구예요?  
B: 서~~을~~~~해~~수~~해~~예요.  
A: 아, ~~있~~배요. 그러면어떻게 가요?  
B: ~~워~~는 ~~책~~가요.

## Chapter 9

### Conversation

웨이터: 뭘 원해요?

김철수: 김치가 아주 뭘 있어요. 주세요.

웨이터: 아, 팔요.

김철수: 하지만 밥이 조금 차가워요.

웨이터: 죄송.

김철수: 그리고 당도 조금 줘요.

웨이터: 뭘 줘요?

김철수: 네그리고 음료 뭘 주세요.

## Chapter 10

### Conversation 1

한승규: 김 선생님이 어떤 책에요?

이선주: 아주 좋은 책에요.

한승규: 재미있는 책에요?

이선주: 네 재미있고 높은 책에요.

### Conversation 2

김영희: 저는 잘생긴 남자를 좋아해요. 철수 씨는요? 어떤 여자를 좋아해요?

김철수: 저는 예쁜 여자를 좋아해요.

김영희: 제가 예쁜 여자예요?

김철수: 물론요. 제가 잘생긴 남자예요?

## Chapter 11

### Conversation

A: 그곳은 뭐예요?

B: 무언가에요?

A: 거기에 그 하얀 건가요?

B: 아, 이쥬 일본국기예요.

A: 아, 네그럼저기에 저쥬 뭐예요?

B: 저쥬 태극기예요.

A: 뭘 리운 무언가에요?

B: 빨간색과 파란색에요.

A: 저의 옷 값 싸네요.

## Chapter 12

### Conversation 1

김영희: 이 옷 얼마예요?

직원: 그 옷 35,100원이에요.

김영희: 여기 40,000원이에요.

직원: 네여기 4,910원이에요.

김영희: 감사합니다. 안녕히 계세요.

### Conversation 2

김영희: 아, 저는 오늘 기쁘요.

김철수: 왜 기쁘요? 무엇 때문에 그렇게 기쁘요?

김영희: 저는 일이 있기 때문에 기쁘요. 그것 때문에 돈 있어요.

김철수: 저는 싫어요.

김영희: 왜 싫어요?

김철수: 저의 일을 싫하기 때문이에요.

## Chapter 13

### Conversation

A: 몇 명 와요?

B: 3명 와요. 저와 김 씨와 제 친구도 와요.

A: 그 친구는 제주도에서 여기까지 와요?

B: 네 맞아요. 그리고 그분의 고양이도 데리고 와요.

A: 고양이라고요? 몇 마리를 데리고 와요?

B: 1마리지만, 그 1마리가 꽤 더 귀요.

A: 아이고! 정말 고양이가 맞아요?

## Chapter 14

### Conversation

양태웅: 오늘 저와 함께 뭘에 가요?

최소영: 아니요. 안 가요.  
양태용: 왜 가지 않아요?  
최소영: 시편 없기 때문에 갈수 없어요.

## Chapter 15

### Conversation

김철수: 안녕하세요. 저는 김철수라고 해요.  
김영희: 안녕하세요. 저는 김영희라고 해요.  
김철수: 취미가 어떻게 돼요?  
김영희: 제 취미는 컴퓨터 게임과 뽀예요.  
김철수: 저는 배와 운뽀예요. 그리고 미국에서 살아요.  
김영희: 저는 한국에서 살아요. 나이가 어떻게 돼요?  
김철수: 저는 21살이에요.  
김영희: 저는 27살입니다. 만나서 뽀워요.  
김철수: 네뽀워요.

## Chapter 16

### Conversation

A: 지금 몇시예요?  
B: 저녁 0시 40분이에요.  
A: 오늘 날짜에요?  
B: 26일이에요.  
A: 월요일.  
B: 월요일.

### Journal

일요일 - 2014년 6월 15일  
오늘 오후시에 배를 타고 제 친구의 뽀 가요.  
제 친구는 한국에서 살아요.  
저는 제 친구를 뽀보고 싶어요.  
한국에서 한국말을 3개월 뽀뽀 뽀뽀.  
뽀뽀 기뽀.

9월 15일까지 한국에 있어요.  
이미 1시이기 때문에 지금부터 ~~종료~~.  
안녕히 계세요.

## Chapter 17

### Conversation

김철수: 저기요. 이 시계가 ~~얼~~요?  
직원: 39,000원이에요.  
김철수: 조금 ~~짜~~주세요.  
직원: ~~얼~~요. 그럼 30,000원이에요.  
김철수: 조금 더 ~~짜~~주세요. 25,000원은 어때요?  
직원: 안 ~~돼~~. 그럼 저에게 29,000원을 주세요.  
김철수: 여기 29,000원입니다. ~~종료~~!  
직원: 안녕히 가세요.  
김철수: 네~~안녕~~ ~~짜~~요!

## Chapter 18

### Conversation

김철수: 가~~짜~~ 어떻게 ~~돼~~?  
김영희: ~~뽕~~과 오빠가 한 ~~멍~~있어요. 당신은요?  
김철수: 저는 ~~뽕~~과 누나가 한 ~~멍~~있고, 형도 한 ~~멍~~있고, ~~뽕~~도 한 ~~멍~~있어요.  
김영희: ~~뽕~~까 ~~짜~~예요.  
김철수: 네~~재~~ ~~뽕~~ 재미있어요.

## Special Thanks

I could not have made this book without the support of the following individuals. You helped to evolve this book into something special. I'd like to give a special thank you to each person here who contributed to this book's creation.

trevarr  
Joel Tersigni  
Kyle  
Jordy Ruiter  
Henry Colomb  
Richard Hamilton  
Mark Harder  
Charles Vought  
James Straker aka 韓  
Korean From Zero!  
Anna Li  
Carl Pray  
Cindy K  
Stephen Johnson  
Rachel "토끼" Bibb  
Jacob G. Cohen  
Eric C.  
Edward Voss  
Mike Dryer  
Catarina Kwan  
Hemal Gala ( INDIA )  
Compcube  
Jasmin S  
Rebecca  
Stephen Santoro

**Blake Richardson**  
**Matthieu Hélie**  
**Nelson Morris**  
**Christopher Langdon**  
**Martin Fletcher**  
**Anthony Royce Prudencio**  
**John S. Hudock**  
**Merrill Grady**  
손현



## Glossary



- 가게 - "store" [Ch. 13]
- 가격 "price," "cost" [Ch. 12]
- 가구 - "furniture" [Ch. 20]
- 가끔 "sometimes" (adverb) [Ch. 19]
- 가다 - "to go" [Ch. 5]
- 가르치다 - "to teach" [Ch. 7]
- 가방 "bag" [Ch. 8]
- 가볍다 - "to be light" [Ch. 10]
- 가수 - "singer" [Ch. 8]
- 가슴 "chest" [Ch. 10]
- 가위 - "scissors" [Ch. 7]
- 가을 - "Autumn" [Ch. 16]
- 가족이 어떻게 됩니까? - "How many people are in your family?" [Ch. 18]
- 가지고 가다 - "to take (something somewhere else)" [Ch. 13]
- 가지고 오다 - "to bring (something here)" [Ch. 13]
- 가지다 - "to hold," "to have (on your person)" [Ch. 13]
- 감사하다 - "to be grateful" [Ch. 9]
- 감사합니다. - "Thank you." [Ch. 9]
- 감자 "potato" [Ch. 7]
- 감자튀김 - "French fries" [Ch. 12]
- 갑자기 - "all of the sudden," "suddenly" (adverb) [Ch. 20]
- 강 "river" [Ch. 6]
- 강하다 - "to be strong" [Ch. 9]
- 같다 - "to be the same," "to be like" [Ch. 11]
- 개 "dog" [Ch. 3]
- 개 item counter [Ch. 13]
- 개구리 - "frog" [Ch. 11]
- 개월 - month counter [Ch. 16]

겔 "gallon" [Ch. 13]  
거기 - "there" [Ch. 11]  
거미 - "spider" [Ch. 3]  
거실 "living room" [Ch. 8]  
거울 "mirror" [Ch. 11]  
거짚 "lie" [Ch. 6]  
거짚을) 하다 - "to lie" [Ch. 6]  
걱을) 하다 - "to worry" [Ch. 18]  
강 "health" [Ch. 10]  
강하다 - "to be healthy" [Ch. 10]  
꼐 "building" [Ch. 11]  
갑 - "to walk" [Ch. 8]  
갑가다 - "to walk (somewhere)" [Ch. 8]  
검 "sword" [Ch. 13]  
검 "black" (adjective) [Ch. 11]  
검 "black" (noun) [Ch. 11]  
것 "a thing" [Ch. 10]  
게 - "crab" [Ch. 13]  
게임 - "game" [Ch. 4]  
게임(을) 하다 - "to play games" [Ch. 4]  
겨울 "Winter" [Ch. 16]  
괘 - "result" [Ch. 7]  
결 "decision" [Ch. 17]  
결을) 하다 - "to decide," "to make a decision" [Ch. 17]  
혼 "marriage" [Ch. 12]  
혼을) 하다 - "to marry" [Ch. 12]  
경 - "economics" [Ch. 12]  
찰 "police" [Ch. 15]  
찰 "policeman" [Ch. 15]  
계단 "stairs" [Ch. 11]  
계획 "plan" [Ch. 17]  
계획(을) 하다 - "to plan" [Ch. 17]  
고기 - "meat" [Ch. 13]  
고똥 - "mackerel" [Ch. 15]

고등학교 "high school" [Ch. 8]  
고모 "aunt" (father's side) [Ch. 18]  
고백(을) 하다 - "to confess" [Ch. 6]  
고양이 - "cat" [Ch. 3]  
고향 "hometown" [Ch. 5]  
골프 "golf" [Ch. 2]  
곳 "place" (noun) [Ch. 11]  
공 "ball" [Ch. 11]  
공부 "study" [Ch. 5]  
공부를 하다 - "to study" [Ch. 5]  
공원 - "a park" [Ch. 14]  
공책 "(study) notebook" [Ch. 13]  
과/와 - "and" [Ch. 7]  
과거 - "the past" [Ch. 20]  
과일 - "fruit" [Ch. 4]  
과자 "snacks" [Ch. 8]  
과학 "science" [Ch. 7]  
관계 - "relationship" [Ch. 18]  
광고 - "advertisement" [Ch. 20]  
괜찮다 - "to be okay," "to be alright" [Ch. 9]  
괜찮습니다. - "No, thank you." [Ch. 16]  
괴물 "monster" [Ch. 6]  
교수 - "professor" [Ch. 8]  
교실 "classroom" [Ch. 8]  
교육 "education" [Ch. 8]  
구 - 9 [Ch. 12]  
구두 "dress shoes" [Ch. 20]  
구월 - "September" [Ch. 16]  
국기 - "flag" [Ch. 11]  
권 book counter [Ch. 13]  
귀 "ear" [Ch. 10]  
귀신 - "ghost" [Ch. 6]  
귀엽다 - "to be cute" [Ch. 10]  
그 - "he/him" (not polite) [Ch. 18]

그 - "that" (adjective) [Ch. 11]  
그 - "Uh..." [Ch. 7]  
그것 "that thing" [Ch. 11]  
그녀 - "she/her" (not polite) [Ch. 18]  
그래서 - "so," "therefore" [Ch. 9]  
그램 "gram" [Ch. 13]  
그러면 "well then" [Ch. 8]  
그런 "that kind of" (adjective) [Ch. 10]  
그럼 "well then" [Ch. 11]  
그렇게 - "so," "in that way" (adverb) [Ch. 12]  
그렇다 - "to be so" [Ch. 10]  
그릇 "bowl" [Ch. 7]  
그리고 - "and," "also" [Ch. 9]  
그리다 - "to draw" [Ch. 6]  
그림 "drawing" [Ch. 6]  
그림(을) 그리다 - "to draw (a drawing)" [Ch. 6]  
그분 - "him," "her," "that person" [Ch. 13]  
괜찮아. - "Well..." [Ch. 10]  
금요일 - "Friday" [Ch. 16]  
기다리다 - "to wait" [Ch. 7]  
기대(를) 하다 - "to look forward," "to expect" [Ch. 16]  
기쁘다 - "to be happy" [Ch. 12]  
기억(을) 하다 - "to remember" [Ch. 14]  
기차 - "(electric) train" [Ch. 16]  
길 "a street," "a road," "a way" [Ch. 5]  
길다 - "to be long" [Ch. 10]  
김치 - "kimchi" [Ch. 3]  
까만 - "black" (adjective) [Ch. 11]  
까만색 "black" (noun) [Ch. 11]  
까맣다 - "to be black" [Ch. 11]  
깨끗하다 - "to be clean" [Ch. 10]  
껌 "gum" [Ch. 17]  
꼭 "surely," "certainly" (adverb) [Ch. 14]  
꽃 "flower" [Ch. 13]

꿀 "honey" [Ch. 8]  
꿈 "a dream" [Ch. 7]  
꿈을) 뒤 - "to dream" [Ch. 7]  
따 - "to turn off" [Ch. 19]  
끝 - "the end" [Ch. 20]  
끝나다 - "to be finished," "to end," "to be over" [Ch. 20]  
끝내다 - "to finish (something)," "to end (something)" [Ch. 20]  
끼다 - "to wear (on hands)" [Ch. 20]

## L

나가다 - "to leave," "to go out" [Ch. 8]  
나누다 - "to share," "to divide" [Ch. 17]  
나라 - "country" [Ch. 8]  
나무 "tree," "wood" [Ch. 13]  
나쁘다 - "to be bad" [Ch. 9]  
나오다 - "to come out" [Ch. 8]  
나이 - "age" [Ch. 15]  
나이가 어떻게 됩니까? - "How old are you?" [Ch. 15]  
낚시 - "fishing" [Ch. 15]  
날 "day" [Ch. 16]  
날씨 - "weather" [Ch. 9]  
남동생 - "male younger sibling" [Ch. 18]  
남자 "boy," "man" [Ch. 6]  
남자 친구 "boyfriend" [Ch. 6]  
남편 "husband" [Ch. 18]  
낮 - "to be low" [Ch. 10]  
내년 "next year" [Ch. 20]  
내다 - "to pay (money)" [Ch. 9]  
내일 - "tomorrow" [Ch. 8]  
냉동고 "freezer" [Ch. 8]  
냉장고 - "refrigerator" [Ch. 8]  
너무 "too (much)," "overly" (adverb) [Ch. 12]  
넣다 - "to put in" [Ch. 17]

네 "yes" [Ch. 1]  
 네 4 (adjective) [Ch. 13]  
 넷 4 [Ch. 13]  
 년 year counter [Ch. 16]  
 뽀 "yellow" (adjective) [Ch. 11]  
 뽀 "yellow" (noun) [Ch. 11]  
 뽀 - "to be yellow" [Ch. 11]  
 뽀 - "song" [Ch. 14]  
 뽀(를) 루다 - "to sing a song" [Ch. 14]  
 뽀 "effort" [Ch. 17]  
 뽀(을) 하다 - "to try," "to put forth effort" [Ch. 17]  
 뽀 - "old person" [Ch. 18]  
 뽀 "laptop" (literally, "notebook") [Ch. 11]  
 놀다 - "to play," "to hang out" [Ch. 5]  
 놀이 뽀 - "amusement park" [Ch. 14]  
 뽀 - "basketball" [Ch. 2]  
 뽀 "joke" [Ch. 20]  
 뽀(을) 하다 - "to tell a joke," "to joke" [Ch. 20]  
 뽀 - "to be high" [Ch. 10]  
 뽀 - "to put down," "to let go" [Ch. 17]  
 누구/누가 - "who" [Ch. 8]  
 누나 - "older sister" (used by males) [Ch. 18]  
 눈 "eye" [Ch. 10]  
 눈) 오다 - "to snow" [Ch. 9]  
 뽀 - "to lie down" [Ch. 7]  
 뽀 "news" [Ch. 6]  
 뽀다 - "to be slow" [Ch. 10]  
 뽀 - "late" (adverb) [Ch. 14]  
 뽀 - "to be late" [Ch. 14]

## ㄷ

다니다 - "to attend (school)," "to commute (to work)" [Ch. 8]  
 다르다 - "to be different" [Ch. 11]

다리 - "bridge" [Ch. 11]  
다리 - "leg" [Ch. 10]  
다섯 5 [Ch. 13]  
다시 - "again" (adverb) [Ch. 16]  
다음달 "next month" Ch.16  
다음주 - "next week" [Ch. 16]  
צע - "a step" [Ch. 11]  
단하다 - "to be simple" [Ch. 10]  
닫 - "to close (something)" [Ch. 6]  
달 "month," "moon" [Ch. 16]  
달 - "to be (sugary) sweet" [Ch. 10]  
달다 - "to run" [Ch. 8]  
달달하다 - "to be (deliciously) sweet" [Ch. 10]  
닭 "chicken" [Ch. 13]  
담배 "tobacco," "cigarettes" [Ch. 9]  
당근 "carrot" [Ch. 13]  
당신 - "you" (not polite) [Ch. 18]  
대가족 "big family" [Ch. 18]  
대답 "answer" [Ch. 17]  
대답하다 - "to answer" [Ch. 17]  
대통령 "the President" [Ch. 12]  
대학 "university" [Ch. 8]  
댄스 "dance" [Ch. 2]  
더 - "more" (adverb) [Ch. 3]  
더럽 - "to be dirty" [Ch. 10]  
덜 - "less" (adverb) [Ch. 3]  
덥 - "to be hot" (weather) [Ch. 9]  
데리고 가다 - "to take (someone somewhere else)" [Ch. 13]  
데리고 오다 - "to take (someone here)" [Ch. 13]  
도 - "also," "even," "too" (particle) [Ch. 4]  
도 - "degrees" [Ch. 13]  
도서관 "library" [Ch. 5]  
도시 - "city" [Ch. 5]  
도와주다 - "to help" [Ch. 17]

도~~출~~을) 하다 - "to arrive" [Ch. 6]  
읽 - "reading" [Ch. 15]  
월 - "Germany" [Ch. 6]  
월 사람 "a German (person)" [Ch. 6]  
월어 - "German (language)" [Ch. 6]  
돈 "money" [Ch. 4]  
돌 "stone" [Ch. 13]  
둥탕 - "to be round" [Ch. 11]  
물 "animal" [Ch. 7]  
뽕 - "younger sibling" [Ch. 18]  
완 - "a period of time" [Ch. 16]  
돼 - "pig" [Ch. 7]  
돼고기 - "pork" [Ch. 13]  
돼꿈세요. - "Dream of pigs." [Ch. 7]  
되다 - "to become," "to be okay," "to work" [Ch. 17]  
두 2 (adjective) [Ch. 13]  
둘 2 [Ch. 13]  
뒤 - "behind," "after" [Ch. 20]  
드레스 "dress" [Ch. 11]  
드물 - "to be rare" [Ch. 9]  
듣 - "to listen" [Ch. 6]  
들어가다 - "to go in" [Ch. 17]  
들어오다 - "to come in" [Ch. 17]  
등 "back (of body)" [Ch. 10]  
등산 "mountain climbing," "hiking" [Ch. 2]  
따뜻하다 - "to be warm" (weather, or to the touch) [Ch. 9]  
딸 "daughter" [Ch. 18]  
땅 "earth," "dirt" [Ch. 13]  
때때로 "from time to time" (adverb) [Ch. 19]  
떡 "rice cake" [Ch. 8]  
떨어지다 - "to drop (something)" [Ch. 6]  
떨어지다 - "to fall" [Ch. 6]  
똑같 - "to be exactly the same" [Ch. 11]  
똑똑하다 - "to be smart" [Ch. 13]



똥 "poop" [Ch. 13]  
뛰 - "to fly," "to jump," "to run" [Ch. 8]  
뜨겁 - "to be hot" (to the touch) [Ch. 9]

## ㄹ

램프 "lamp" [Ch. 20]  
레몬 "lemon" [Ch. 4]  
로션 "lotion" [Ch. 19]  
리터 - "liter" [Ch. 13]

## ㄴ

넵 - animal counter[Ch. 13]  
새다 - "to drink" [Ch. 6]  
마일 - "mile" [Ch. 13]  
끝마 - "last" (noun) [Ch. 19]  
넵 40 [Ch. 13]  
만 - "only" (particle) [Ch. 4]  
만 - 10000 [Ch. 12]  
만나다 - "to meet" [Ch. 13]  
(만나서) 뵙습니다. - "Nice to meet you." [Ch. 1]  
만들다 - "to make" [Ch. 6]  
많 - "a lot" (adverb) [Ch. 9]  
많 팔아요. - "Sell a lot." [Ch. 17]  
말 "horse" [Ch. 11]  
말 "word" [Ch. 6]  
말(을) 하다 - "to speak," "to say" [Ch. 6]  
말(을) 마 - "to (make) dry," "to dry (something)" [Ch. 19]  
말 - "to be bright and clear" (weather) [Ch. 9]  
맛 "flavor" [Ch. 9]  
맛(이) 없다 - "to not be delicious," "to not taste good" [Ch. 14]  
맛(이) 있다 - "to be delicious" [Ch. 9]  
맞다 - "to be correct" [Ch. 13]

매년 "every year" [Ch. 20]  
매월 - "every month" [Ch. 20]  
매일 - "every day" [Ch. 20]  
매주 - "every week" [Ch. 20]  
맥주 - "beer" [Ch. 13]  
맵다 - "to be spicy" [Ch. 9]  
머리 - "head," "hair" [Ch. 10]  
머리카락 "hair" [Ch. 10]  
먹다 - "to eat" [Ch. 4]  
먼저 - "first (before anything/anyone else)" (adverb) [Ch. 19]  
먼저 갑시다. - "I'll go first." [Ch. 19]  
멀다 - "to be far" [Ch. 10]  
멋이 없다 - "to not be cool," "to be unstylish" [Ch. 14]  
멋이 있다 - "to be cool," "to be stylish" [Ch. 9]  
메시지 - "message" [Ch. 17]  
몇일 "what day" [Ch. 16]  
몇일입니까? - "What day (of the month) is it?" [Ch. 16]  
명 person counter[Ch. 13]  
몇 "how many" (adjective) [Ch. 13]  
몇년 "what year," "how many years" [Ch. 16]  
몇시 - "what time" [Ch. 16]  
몇시입니까? - "What time is it?" [Ch. 16]  
몇월 - "what month" [Ch. 16]  
모니터 - "monitor" [Ch. 11]  
모른다 - "to not know" [Ch. 14]  
모자 "hat" [Ch. 11]  
목 - "neck," "throat" [Ch. 10]  
목(이) 뻐다 - "to be thirsty" [Ch. 9]  
목소리 - "voice" [Ch. 10]  
목요일 - "Thursday" [Ch. 16]  
목표 "a goal" [Ch. 17]  
몸 "body" [Ch. 10]  
무겁다 - "to be heavy" [Ch. 10]  
무례하다 - "to be impolite" [Ch. 12]

무섭 - "to be scary," "to be afraid" [Ch. 11]  
무슨 "what" (adjective) [Ch. 11]  
무엇 "what" (noun) [Ch. 7]  
문 - "door" [Ch. 8]  
문제 - "problem" [Ch. 11]  
문화 - "culture" [Ch. 12]  
묻 - "to inquire" [Ch. 19]  
물 "water" [Ch. 6]  
물고기 - "(alive) fish" [Ch. 13]  
물어보다 - "to ask" [Ch. 17]  
미국 - "America" [Ch. 6]  
미국 사람 "an American (person)" [Ch. 6]  
미국 음식 "American food" [Ch. 10]  
미국인 - "an American (person)" [Ch. 6]  
미래 - "the future" [Ch. 20]  
미술 "art" [Ch. 7]  
미식 "American food" (abbreviation) [Ch. 10]  
미식축구 - "American football" [Ch. 2]  
미워하다 - "to hate" (person) [Ch. 5]  
미터 - "meter" [Ch. 13]  
믿 - "to believe" [Ch. 6]  
밀리터 - "millileter" [Ch. 13]  
밀리미터 - "millimeter" [Ch. 13]  
밑 - "underneath" [Ch. 20]

## ㅅ

사나 - "banana" [Ch. 4]  
바다 - "ocean" [Ch. 5]  
사장 - "beach" [Ch. 5]  
바람 "wind" [Ch. 13]  
바르다 - "to spread (on)," "to apply" [Ch. 19]  
바빠 - "to be busy" [Ch. 10]  
바지 - "pants" [Ch. 20]

박물관 "museum" [Ch. 5]  
박사 "doctor" (someone holding a PhD) [Ch. 8]  
밖 - "outside" [Ch. 20]  
반 "half" [Ch. 16]  
반바지 - "shorts" (literally, "half pants") [Ch. 20]  
반지 - "ring" [Ch. 20]  
받 - "to get," "to receive" [Ch. 4]  
발 "foot" [Ch. 10]  
발가락 "toe" [Ch. 10]  
밝 - "to be bright" [Ch. 10]  
밤 "night" [Ch. 8]  
밥 - "(cooked) rice," "a meal" [Ch. 8]  
밥(을) 먹다 - "to eat (a meal)" [Ch. 8]  
방 "room" [Ch. 8]  
방법 "method," "way" [Ch. 10]  
방송 "a broadcast" [Ch. 5]  
배 "belly" [Ch. 10]  
배 "boat" [Ch. 4]  
배가 고프다 - "to be hungry" [Ch. 9]  
배구 - "volleyball" [Ch. 2]  
배우 - "to learn" [Ch. 7]  
백 - 100 [Ch. 12]  
백만 - 1000000 [Ch. 12]  
뱀 "snake" [Ch. 11]  
배다 - "to throw away" [Ch. 17]  
버스 "bus" [Ch. 16]  
버터 - "butter" [Ch. 8]  
번호 "number (of something)" [Ch. 12]  
벌다 - "to earn (money)" [Ch. 4]  
벌레 "bug," "insect" [Ch. 3]  
벗다 - "to take off (clothing)" [Ch. 20]  
따 - "to cut (into)" [Ch. 11]  
벽 "wall" [Ch. 11]  
병원 - "hospital" [Ch. 5]

보고 싶다 - "to miss," "to want to see" [Ch. 16]  
보내다 - "to send" [Ch. 17]  
보다 - "to see" [Ch. 6]  
보다 (더) - "more than" [Ch. 13]  
볶밥 - "fried rice" [Ch. 9]  
봄 "Spring" [Ch. 16]  
빡빡 - "to be jealous" [Ch. 17]  
부다 - "to sing" [Ch. 14]  
부모 - "parents" [Ch. 18]  
분 - "part," "portion" [Ch. 5]  
부엌 "kitchen" [Ch. 10]  
부터 - "from (a time or location)" [Ch. 16]  
환 - "North Korea" [Ch. 6]  
분 - minute counter [Ch. 16]  
불 "fire" [Ch. 13]  
불 dollar counter [Ch. 17]  
불편하다 - "to be uncomfortable" [Ch. 13]  
비가 오다 - "to rain" [Ch. 9]  
비밀 "a secret" [Ch. 12]  
비밀번호 "password" [Ch. 12]  
비슷하다 - "to be similar" [Ch. 11]  
비싸 - "to be expensive" [Ch. 9]  
비행기 - "airplane" [Ch. 16]  
항공표 "plane ticket" [Ch. 12]  
빌다 - "to borrow," "to lend" [Ch. 17]  
빠르다 - "to be fast" [Ch. 10]  
빨간 "red" (adjective) [Ch. 11]  
빨간 "red" (noun) [Ch. 11]  
빨간 - "to be red" [Ch. 11]  
빨래 - "laundry" [Ch. 17]  
빨래(를) 하다 - "to do the laundry" [Ch. 17]  
빨리 - "quickly," "fast" (adverb) [Ch. 14]  
빵 "bread" [Ch. 8]  
빼 - "to remove" [Ch. 11]

뺨 "cheek" [Ch. 11]  
뿔 "horn(s)" [Ch. 10]

人

사 4 [Ch. 12]  
과 - "apple" [Ch. 13]  
다 - "to buy" [Ch. 17]  
사람 "person" [Ch. 6]  
랑 - "love" [Ch. 4]  
랑(을) 하다 - "to love" [Ch. 5]  
랑에 빠지다 - "to fall in love" [Ch. 20]  
랑합니다. - "I love." [Ch. 2]  
실 "office" [Ch. 5]  
용하다 - "to utilize," "to use" [Ch. 17]  
월 - "April" [Ch. 16]  
에다 - "cider," "soda" [Ch. 6]  
자 "lion" [Ch. 13]  
장 - "boss" [Ch. 12]  
전 "dictionary" [Ch. 3]  
전 "photo" [Ch. 6]  
전(을) 찍 - "to take a photo" [Ch. 6]  
촌 "cousin" [Ch. 18]  
탕 "sweets" [Ch. 8]  
회 "society" [Ch. 12]  
산 "mountain" [Ch. 11]  
살 - "flesh," "fat" [Ch. 8]  
살 - age counter [Ch. 13]  
살구 - "apricot" [Ch. 11]  
살구색 "apricot color" [Ch. 11]  
살다 - "to live" [Ch. 5]  
삶 "life" [Ch. 18]  
삼 - 3 [Ch. 12]  
삼겹살 - "pork belly" [Ch. 3]

삼월 - "March" [Ch. 16]  
삼촌 "uncle" [Ch. 18]  
상자 "box" [Ch. 13]  
새 "bird" [Ch. 11]  
새끼 - "to be new" [Ch. 10]  
새벽 "past midnight" [Ch. 16]  
샌드위치 - "sandwich" [Ch. 20]  
생각 "an idea," "a thought" [Ch. 10]  
생각(을) 하다 - "to think" [Ch. 10]  
생선 - "(dead) fish" [Ch. 15]  
샤워(를) 하다 - "to take a shower" [Ch. 17]  
샴푸 "shampoo" [Ch. 17]  
서다 - "to stand" [Ch. 7]  
서른 30 [Ch. 13]  
서울 "Seoul" [Ch. 8]  
섞다 - "to mix" [Ch. 11]  
선물 "present" [Ch. 11]  
선생님 - "Sir," "Mr.," "teacher" [Ch. 7]  
선택(을) 하다 - "to choose," "to select" [Ch. 20]  
썩지 - "(dirty) dishes" [Ch. 17]  
썩지(를) 하다 - "to do the dishes" [Ch. 17]  
설탕 "sugar" [Ch. 8]  
섬 "island" [Ch. 6]  
성격 "personality" [Ch. 6]  
성적 "(school) grade" [Ch. 10]  
세 - 3 (adjective) [Ch. 13]  
세계 - "world" [Ch. 13]  
세수(를) 하다 - "to wash one's face and hands," "to wash up" [Ch. 17]  
센티미터 - "centimeter" [Ch. 13]  
셋 3 [Ch. 13]  
셔츠 "shirt" [Ch. 11]  
소 - "cow" [Ch. 13]  
소개(를) 하다 - "to introduce" [Ch. 7]  
소금 - "salt" [Ch. 8]

소리 - "sound," "noise" [Ch. 10]  
소시지 - "sausage" [Ch. 7]  
소주 - "(Korean) alcohol" [Ch. 13]  
속 "underwear" [Ch. 11]  
손 "hand" [Ch. 10]  
손가락 "finger" [Ch. 10]  
손녀 - "granddaughter" [Ch. 18]  
손님 - "guest," "customer" [Ch. 12]  
목시계 - "wristwatch" [Ch. 20]  
손자 "grandson" [Ch. 18]  
쇠고기 - "beef" [Ch. 13]  
수업 "lesson," "course," "class" [Ch. 20]  
수영 - "swimming" [Ch. 2]  
수영(을) 하다 - "to swim" [Ch. 9]  
수영장 "swimming pool" [Ch. 5]  
수요일 - "Wednesday" [Ch. 16]  
수프 "soup" [Ch. 9]  
수학 "math" [Ch. 7]  
숙제 - "homework" [Ch. 7]  
숙제(를) 하다 - "to do homework" [Ch. 7]  
술 "alcohol" [Ch. 9]  
숫자 "an integer," "a number" [Ch. 12]  
숲 "forest" [Ch. 13]  
쉬다 - "to rest" [Ch. 10]  
쉬다 - "to be easy" [Ch. 10]  
슈퍼마켓 "supermarket" [Ch. 5]  
무 20 (adjective) [Ch. 13]  
물 20 [Ch. 13]  
스테이크 "steak" [Ch. 7]  
스페인어 - "Spanish (language)" [Ch. 6]  
스포츠 "sports" [Ch. 2]  
슬퍼하다 - "to be sad" [Ch. 12]  
시 - "o'clock" [Ch. 16]  
시 - "poetry" [Ch. 2]



시간 "time" [Ch. 11]  
시간 hour counter [Ch. 16]  
시계 - "clock," "watch" [Ch. 17]  
시다 - "to be sour" [Ch. 10]  
시대 "a period," "an age," "a generation" [Ch. 11]  
시원하다 - "to be cool" (weather, or to the touch) [Ch. 9]  
시월 - "October" [Ch. 16]  
시작(을) 하다 - "to begin," "to start" [Ch. 20]  
시험 "test" [Ch. 7]  
시험(을) 보다 - "to take a test" [Ch. 10]  
당 - "restaurant" [Ch. 9]  
식 - "vinegar" [Ch. 8]  
신 - "god" [Ch. 6]  
신다 - "to wear (on feet)" [Ch. 20]  
신뢰 "trust" [Ch. 11]  
신문 - "newspaper" [Ch. 6]  
신발 "shoes" [Ch. 13]  
천하다 - "to do a discourtesy" [Ch. 17]  
천하지만... - "Excuse me but..." [Ch. 17]  
천합니다. - "Excuse me." [Ch. 17]  
싫하다 - "to dislike" (person/thing) [Ch. 5]  
싫합니다. - "I dislike." [Ch. 2]  
심하다 - "to be bored" [Ch. 14]  
심장 "heart" [Ch. 10]  
십 10 [Ch. 12]  
십만 - 100000 [Ch. 12]  
십월 - "December" [Ch. 16]  
十一月월 - "November" [Ch. 16]  
싸 - "to be cheap" [Ch. 10]  
싸우 - "to fight" [Ch. 7]  
쌀 "(uncooked) rice" [Ch. 8]  
짜 - "to be bitter" [Ch. 10]  
좌 - "to use," "to write" [Ch. 17]  
좌 - "to wear (on head)" [Ch. 20]

궤 - "garbage," "trash" [Ch. 17]  
씨 - "Mr," "Ms./Mrs." [Ch. 5]  
씹 - "to chew" [Ch. 17]  
씻 - "to wash," "to bathe" [Ch. 17]



아 - "Ah" [Ch. 7]  
아기 - "baby" [Ch. 18]  
아내 - "wife" [Ch. 18]  
아니다 - "to not be" [Ch. 14]  
아니요 - "no" [Ch. 1]  
아들 - "son" [Ch. 18]  
아르메 톱 or 아르메 - "part time job" [Ch. 4]  
아름다 - "to be beautiful" [Ch. 9]  
아(마)도 - "maybe," "possibly" [Ch. 20]  
아저 - "father" [Ch. 18]  
아빠 - "dad" [Ch. 18]  
아이 - "child" [Ch. 18]  
아이고! - "Oh my!" [Ch. 13]  
아이스크림 "ice cream" [Ch. 4]  
아주 - "very" (adverb) [Ch. 9]  
아침 "morning" [Ch. 16]  
아침식사 - "breakfast" (literally, "morning meal") [Ch. 8]  
아파트 "apartment" [Ch. 6]  
아팠 - "to be in pain," "to be painful," "to be sick" [Ch. 10]  
아홉 9 [Ch. 13]  
악하다 - "to be evil" [Ch. 9]  
안 - "inside" [Ch. 20]  
안 되다 - "to not become," "to not be okay," "to not work" [Ch. 17]  
안녕하세요. - "Hello." [Ch. 1]  
안녕히 가세요. - "Goodbye." ("Go in peace.") [Ch. 1]  
안녕히 계세요. - "Goodbye." ("Stay in peace.") [Ch. 1]  
안녕히 주무세요. - "Goodnight." ("Sleep well.") [Ch. 7]

앉 - "to sit" [Ch. 7]  
알다 - "to know," "to understand" [Ch. 8]  
알습니다. - "I see.," "Understood." [Ch. 8]  
알 - "to know" [Ch. 14]  
앞 - "in front of" [Ch. 20]  
야구 - "baseball" [Ch. 2]  
채 "vegetables" [Ch. 4]  
약 "medicine," "drugs" [Ch. 15]  
약 - "pharmacy" [Ch. 15]  
약속하다 - "to promise" [Ch. 18]  
약하다 - "to be weak" [Ch. 9]  
양 - "sheep" [Ch. 11]  
양말 "socks" [Ch. 13]  
양복 "a suit" [Ch. 13]  
양파 "onion" [Ch. 7]  
어깨 "shoulder" [Ch. 10]  
어둡 - "to be dark" [Ch. 10]  
어디 "where" [Ch. 8]  
어떤 "what kind of" (adjective) [Ch. 10]  
어떻게 - "how" [Ch. 8]  
어떻게 됩니까? - "Tell me about..." [Ch. 15]  
어떻게 지내세요? - "How are you doing?" [Ch. 17]  
어떻다 - "to be how" [Ch. 10]  
어렵 - "to be difficult" [Ch. 10]  
어른 "adult" [Ch. 18]  
어머니 - "mother" [Ch. 18]  
어제 - "yesterday" [Ch. 8]  
억 - 100000000 [Ch. 12]  
언니 - "older sister" (used by females) [Ch. 18]  
언어 - "language" [Ch. 15]  
언어학 "linguistics" [Ch. 15]  
언제 - "when" [Ch. 8]  
얼굴 "face" [Ch. 11]  
얼마니까? - "How much does it cost?" [Ch. 12]

엄마 "mom" [Ch. 18]  
없다 - "to not exist" [Ch. 14]  
에 - "to," "at," "in" (particle) [Ch. 5]  
에게 - "to (a person)" [Ch. 17]  
에게(서) - "from (a person)" [Ch. 17]  
에서 - "from," "at," "in" (particle) [Ch. 13]  
여기 - "here" [Ch. 11]  
여기요. - "Over here." ("Excuse me.") [Ch. 17]  
여덟 8 [Ch. 13]  
여뽕 - "female younger sibling" [Ch. 18]  
여름 "pimple," "acne" [Ch. 11]  
여름 "Summer" [Ch. 16]  
여보세요? - "Hello?" (on the phone) [Ch. 19]  
여섯 6 [Ch. 13]  
여자 "girl," "woman" [Ch. 6]  
여자친구 - "girlfriend" [Ch. 6]  
여행 "travel," "a trip" [Ch. 15]  
역사 "history" [Ch. 2]  
역시 - "(just) as expected" (adverb) [Ch. 20]  
역할 "(acting) role" [Ch. 5]  
연출 "performance," "play" [Ch. 5]  
연습(을) 하다 - "to practice" [Ch. 17]  
연필 "pencil" [Ch. 4]  
열 10 [Ch. 13]  
열다 - "to open (something)" [Ch. 6]  
열쇠 "key" [Ch. 8]  
열심히 - "diligently," "hard" (adverb) [Ch. 20]  
열차 - "(ordinary) train" [Ch. 16]  
영 - 0 [Ch. 12]  
영국 - "England" [Ch. 6]  
영국 사람 "English (person)" [Ch. 6]  
영어 - "English (language)" [Ch. 6]  
영화 - "movie" [Ch. 3]  
영화관 "movie theater" [Ch. 5]

옆 - "beside," "(right) next to" [Ch. 20]  
예 - "an example (of something)" [Ch. 11]  
예(를) 들면 - "For example..." [Ch. 11]  
예쁘다 - "to be pretty" [Ch. 9]  
예의(가) 밝다 - "to be polite" [Ch. 12]  
오 - 5 [Ch. 12]  
오늘 "today" [Ch. 8]  
오다 - "to come" [Ch. 5]  
오랫동안 - "for a long time" (adverb) [Ch. 16]  
오렌지 - "orange" [Ch. 4]  
오빠 - "older brother" (used by females) [Ch. 18]  
오월 - "May" [Ch. 16]  
오전 "before noon," "A.M." [Ch. 16]  
오후 "after noon," "P.M." [Ch. 16]  
올해 "this year" [Ch. 20]  
움직이다 - "to move (something)" [Ch. 20]  
옷 "clothing," "clothes" [Ch. 11]  
와/과 함께 - "together with" [Ch. 14]  
완벽하다 - "to be perfect" [Ch. 19]  
왜 - "why" [Ch. 8]  
외국 - "foreign country" [Ch. 6]  
외국어 - "foreign language" [Ch. 6]  
외우다 - "to memorize" [Ch. 14]  
요리 - "cooking" [Ch. 11]  
요리(를) 하다 - "to cook" [Ch. 11]  
요즘 "lately," "nowadays," "these days" [Ch. 7]  
우리 - "we," "us" [Ch. 8]  
우리 나라 - "Korea" (literally, "our country") [Ch. 8]  
우산 "umbrella" [Ch. 11]  
우유 "milk" [Ch. 6]  
우주 - "universe" [Ch. 13]  
운동 "exercise" [Ch. 15]  
운동(을) 하다 - "to exercise" [Ch. 13]  
운전(을) 하다 - "to drive" [Ch. 13]

울 - "to cry" [Ch. 4]  
움이다 - "to move" [Ch. 20]  
웃다 - "to be humorous," "to be funny" [Ch. 20]  
웃 - "to smile," "to laugh" [Ch. 4]  
원 - "Won" (Korean currency) [Ch. 12]  
원숭 - "monkey" [Ch. 3]  
원하다 - "to want" [Ch. 5]  
원하지 않습니다. - "I don't want..." [Ch. 4]  
원합니다. - "I want..." [Ch. 4]  
월 - month name counter [Ch. 16]  
월요일 - "Monday" [Ch. 16]  
웨이터 - "waiter" [Ch. 9]  
위 - "above," "on top of" [Ch. 20]  
위 - "stomach" [Ch. 10]  
유럽 "Europe" [Ch. 6]  
유리 - "glass" [Ch. 20]  
유명하다 - "to be famous" [Ch. 14]  
월 - "June" [Ch. 16]  
육 6 [Ch. 12]  
은행 "bank" [Ch. 5]  
을/를 - Object Marker [Ch. 2]  
(을/를) 더 주세요. - "Please give me more..." [Ch. 17]  
음 "Hm" [Ch. 7]  
음 "food" [Ch. 2]  
음 "music" [Ch. 2]  
의 - Possessive Marker [Ch. 11]  
의견 "opinion" [Ch. 6]  
의미 - "meaning" [Ch. 6]  
의사 "(medical) doctor" [Ch. 8]  
의자 "chair" [Ch. 9]  
이 - "this" (adjective) [Ch. 11]  
이 - 2 [Ch. 12]  
이(빨) - "tooth," "teeth" [Ch. 10]  
이/가 - Subject Marker [Ch. 8]

이것 "this thing" [Ch. 11]  
이기다 - "to win" [Ch. 7]  
이다 - "to be" [Ch. 6]  
이런 "this kind of" (adjective) [Ch. 10]  
이렇다 - "to be this way" [Ch. 10]  
이름 "name" [Ch. 11]  
이모 "aunt" (mother's side) [Ch. 18]  
이미 - "already" (adverb) [Ch. 16]  
이번 달 "this month" [Ch. 16]  
이번 주 - "this week" [Ch. 16]  
이성하다 - "to be strange" [Ch. 19]  
이야기 - "story" [Ch. 14]  
이야기(를) 하다 - "to chat," "to gossip" [Ch. 14]  
이웃 "neighbor" [Ch. 12]  
이월 - "February" [Ch. 16]  
이제 - "(from) now" [Ch. 6]  
이틀 - "two days" [Ch. 16]  
이해를 하다 - "to understand" [Ch. 14]  
인간 "human" [Ch. 6]  
인기 - "popularity" [Ch. 14]  
인기(가) 없다 - "to be unpopular" [Ch. 14]  
인기(가) 있다 - "to be popular" [Ch. 14]  
인상 "impression" [Ch. 19]  
일 - "work," "job" [Ch. 4]  
일 - 1 [Ch. 12]  
일 - day counter [Ch. 16]  
일(을) 하다 - "to work" [Ch. 8]  
일곱 7 [Ch. 13]  
일본 "Japan" [Ch. 6]  
일본 사람 "a Japanese (person)" [Ch. 6]  
일본 음식 "Japanese food" [Ch. 10]  
일본말 "Japanese (language)" [Ch. 6]  
일본어 - "Japanese (language)" [Ch. 16]  
일본인 - "a Japanese (person)" [Ch. 6]

일식 "Japanese food" (abbreviation) [Ch. 10]  
일어나다 - "to wake up" [Ch. 8]  
일요일 - "Sunday" [Ch. 16]  
일월 - "January" [Ch. 16]  
일찍 "early" (adverb) [Ch. 14]  
읽다 - "to read" [Ch. 6]  
입 - "mouth" [Ch. 10]  
입니다 - "am," "is," "are," "equals" [Ch. 1]  
입다 - "to wear (on body)" [Ch. 20]  
입술 "lips" [Ch. 10]  
있다 - "to exist" [Ch. 6]

## ㅈ

(자동차) - "car" [Ch. 4]  
자르다 - "to cut (off)," "to sever" [Ch. 11]  
좌 - "a seat," "space (for something)" [Ch. 7]  
자연 "nature" [Ch. 12]  
자연스럽다 - "to be natural" [Ch. 12]  
자유 "freedom" [Ch. 12]  
자전거 - "bicycle" [Ch. 16]  
자주 - "often" (adverb) [Ch. 19]  
작가 - "author" [Ch. 3]  
작년 "last year" [Ch. 20]  
작 - "to be small" [Ch. 9]  
잔디 "grass," "lawn" [Ch. 13]  
잘 - "well" (adverb) [Ch. 7]  
잘 가요. - "Go well." [Ch. 19]  
잘 지내세요? - "Are you doing well?" [Ch. 7]  
잘생기다 - "to be handsome" [Ch. 10]  
잘생긴 - "handsome" (adjective) [Ch. 10]  
잠 "sleep" [Ch. 8]  
(잠을) 자 - "to sleep" [Ch. 8]  
잡 - "to grab," "to catch" [Ch. 10]



장 flat item counter [Ch. 13]

쟁 - "rose" [Ch. 13]

재미(가) 없다 - "to not be fun," "to not be entertaining" [Ch. 14]

재미(가) 있다 - "to be fun," "to be entertaining" [Ch. 10]

저 - "I," "me" [Ch. 1]

저 - "that (farther)" (adjective) [Ch. 11]

저 - "Uh..." [Ch. 7]

저것 "that thing (farther)" [Ch. 11]

저기 - "there (farther)" [Ch. 11]

저기요. - "Over here." ("Excuse me.") [Ch. 17]

저녁 "evening" [Ch. 16]

저녁~~식사~~ "dinner" (literally, "evening meal") [Ch. 8]

저는 \_\_\_\_ (이)라고 합니다. - "My name is \_\_\_\_." [Ch. 15]

저는 \_\_\_\_입니다. - "I am \_\_\_\_." [Ch. 1]

저렴다 - "to be inexpensive" [Ch. 10]

저의 이름 \_\_\_\_입니다. - "My name is \_\_\_\_." [Ch. 11]

전 penny counter [Ch. 17]

전~~전~~ "electronic dictionary" [Ch. 3]

화 - "telephone call" [Ch. 12]

화(를) 땀 - "to answer the phone" [Ch. 12]

화(를) 하다 - "to telephone," "to call" [Ch. 12]

화기 - "telephone" [Ch. 12]

화번호 "phone number" [Ch. 12]

점~~식사~~ "lunch" (literally, "afternoon meal") [Ch. 8]

젓~~가락~~ "chopsticks" [Ch. 7]

정~~정~~ "really" (adverb) [Ch. 7]

정~~정~~ "government" [Ch. 12]

정~~정~~ - "noon" [Ch. 16]

정~~정~~ - "garden" [Ch. 6]

정~~정~~ - "politics" [Ch. 12]

제주도 - "Jeju Island" [Ch. 13]

조금 - "a little" [Ch. 9]

(조금) 깎주세요. - "Please give me a discount." [Ch. 17]

조금 더 - "a little more" (adverb) [Ch. 17]

조금만 - "only a little" [Ch. 9]  
조카 "niece," "nephew" [Ch. 18]  
졸다 - "to be sleepy" [Ch. 10]  
종 - "paper" [Ch. 13]  
잘 - "to be good" [Ch. 9]  
좋하다 - "to like" [Ch. 5]  
좋합니다. - "I like." [Ch. 2]  
좋은 아침입니다. - "Good morning." [Ch. 16]  
좋은 하루 되세요. - "Have a nice day." [Ch. 16]  
죄송하다 - "to be sorry" [Ch. 9]  
죄송합니다. - "I'm sorry." [Ch. 9]  
주다 - "to give" [Ch. 17]  
주름 "wrinkle(s)" [Ch. 11]  
주문(을) 하다 - "to order (something)" [Ch. 17]  
주방 "kitchen" [Ch. 10]  
주세요. - "Please give me..." [Ch. 4]  
주소 - "an address" [Ch. 5]  
주일 - week counter [Ch. 16]  
주제 - "topic," "theme" [Ch. 14]  
죽 - "to die" [Ch. 4]  
죽음 "death" [Ch. 18]  
준비(를) 하다 - "to prepare" [Ch. 16]  
중 "center" [Ch. 20]  
중화 - "China" [Ch. 6]  
중국 사람 "a Chinese (person)" [Ch. 6]  
중국 음식 "Chinese food" [Ch. 10]  
중국말 "Chinese (language)" [Ch. 6]  
중국어 - "Chinese (language)" [Ch. 16]  
중화 "Chinese food" (abbreviation) [Ch. 10]  
중요하다 - "to be important" [Ch. 10]  
중학교 "middle school" [Ch. 8]  
쥐 "mouse," "rat" [Ch. 13]  
중할머니 - "great grandmother" [Ch. 18]  
중할아버지 - "great grandfather" [Ch. 18]

지갑 - "wallet" [Ch. 15]  
지구 - "the Earth" [Ch. 13]  
지금 - "(right) now" [Ch. 6]  
지금부터 - "from now" [Ch. 16]  
지난달 "last month" Ch.16  
지난주 - "last week" [Ch. 16]  
지다 - "to lose" [Ch. 7]  
지도 - "map" [Ch. 6]  
지루하다 - "to be boring" [Ch. 14]  
지리 - "geography" [Ch. 7]  
지붕 "roof" [Ch. 8]  
지역 "an area," "a region" [Ch. 5]  
지하철 - "subway" [Ch. 16]  
직원 - "employee" [Ch. 12]  
절 "truth" [Ch. 6]  
진실을 밝히다 - "to tell the truth" [Ch. 6]  
질문 - "question" [Ch. 11]  
질문(을) 하다 - "to ask a question" [Ch. 11]  
집 "home," "house" [Ch. 5]  
주소 - "home address" [Ch. 5]  
짧 - "to be short (in length)" [Ch. 10]  
쪽 - "note" [Ch. 17]

## 大

차 - "tea" [Ch. 4]  
차갑다 - "to be cold" (to the touch) [Ch. 9]  
차다 - "to kick" [Ch. 7]  
차다 - "to wear (on wrists)" [Ch. 20]  
차이 - "difference" [Ch. 6]  
참 - "tuna" [Ch. 4]  
창문 - "window" [Ch. 11]  
찾 - "to look for," "to find" [Ch. 10]  
책 "book" [Ch. 3]

책 "desk," "(writing) table" [Ch. 20]  
처음 "first" (noun) [Ch. 19]  
처음입니다. - "Nice to meet you." [Ch. 1]  
천 1000 [Ch. 12]  
천 - 10000000 [Ch. 12]  
천에요. - "You're welcome." [Ch. 16]  
천장 "ceiling" [Ch. 8]  
첫 "first" (adjective) [Ch. 19]  
첫인상 "first impression" [Ch. 19]  
초 second counter[Ch. 16]  
초(를) 하다 - "to invite" [Ch. 13]  
초등학교 "elementary school" [Ch. 8]  
초록 "green" (noun/adjective) [Ch. 11]  
밥 - "sushi" (vinegared rice with fish, etc.) [Ch. 7]  
최고 - "(the) best" [Ch. 15]  
최악 "(the) worst" [Ch. 15]  
추가(를) 하다 - "to add (to something)" [Ch. 11]  
추하다 - "to be ugly" [Ch. 10]  
축구 - "football" [Ch. 2]  
축하(를) 하다 - "to congratulate" [Ch. 18]  
축하합니다. - "Congratulations." [Ch. 18]  
출발(을) 하다 - "to depart" [Ch. 6]  
춤(을) 춰 - "to dance" [Ch. 7]  
춥다 - "to be cold" (weather) [Ch. 9]  
취 - "hobby" [Ch. 15]  
치과 - "dentist" [Ch. 5]  
치과 의사 "dentist" [Ch. 15]  
치다 - "to hit" [Ch. 7]  
치약 "toothpaste" [Ch. 17]  
치즈 "cheese" [Ch. 5]  
친 - "friend" [Ch. 6]  
친하다 - "to be nice" [Ch. 9]  
칠 7 [Ch. 12]  
칠월 - "July" [Ch. 16]

침 "bed" [Ch. 8]  
침 "bedroom" [Ch. 8]  
칫솔 "toothbrush" [Ch. 17]

## ㄴ

카메라 - "camera" [Ch. 6]  
카페 "café" [Ch. 5]  
칼 "knife," "blade" [Ch. 13]  
캔디 "candy" [Ch. 8]  
커피 "coffee" [Ch. 9]  
컴퓨터 - "computer" [Ch. 10]  
컴퓨터 게임 - "computer game" [Ch. 15]  
컵 "cup" [Ch. 13]  
케이크 "cake" [Ch. 10]  
켜다 - "to turn on" [Ch. 19]  
코 "nose" [Ch. 10]  
코트 "coat" [Ch. 20]  
콜라 - "cola" [Ch. 7]  
되다 - "to be big" [Ch. 9]  
키 "height," "stature" [Ch. 13]  
키가 작다 - "to be short (height)" [Ch. 13]  
키가 크다 - "to be tall (height)" [Ch. 13]  
키우다 - "to raise" [Ch. 6]  
킬로그램 - "kilo(gram)" [Ch. 13]

## ㄷ

타다 - "to ride" [Ch. 16]  
탁구 - "table tennis," "ping-pong" [Ch. 2]  
태극기 - "the Korean national flag" [Ch. 11]  
태어나다 - "to be born" [Ch. 4]  
택시 - "taxi" [Ch. 16]  
턱 "chin" [Ch. 11]

털 "hair (not on head)," "fur" [Ch. 10]  
테스 "tennis" [Ch. 2]  
텔레비전 "television" [Ch. 6]  
토마토 - "tomato" [Ch. 4]  
토요일 - "Saturday" [Ch. 16]  
톤 "ton" [Ch. 13]  
특히 - "especially" (adverb) [Ch. 19]  
틀리다 - "to be incorrect" [Ch. 13]  
텔레 "television" (abbreviation) [Ch. 6]  
티셔츠 or T 셔츠 - "T-shirt" [Ch. 11]  
팀 "team" [Ch. 17]

## II

파 "green onion" [Ch. 7]  
파란 "blue" (adjective) [Ch. 11]  
파랗게 "blue" (noun) [Ch. 11]  
파랗다 - "to be blue" [Ch. 11]  
파스타 - "pasta" [Ch. 7]  
파티 "party" [Ch. 13]  
팔 "arm" [Ch. 10]  
팔 8 [Ch. 12]  
팔다 - "to sell" [Ch. 17]  
팔월 - "August" [Ch. 16]  
파다 - "to beat," "to bash" [Ch. 11]  
펜 "pen" [Ch. 6]  
편지 - "(written) letter" [Ch. 17]  
편하다 - "to be comfortable" [Ch. 13]  
포 - "grape" [Ch. 4]  
포크 "fork" [Ch. 7]  
표 "ticket" [Ch. 12]  
풀 "glue" [Ch. 7]  
랑스 "France" [Ch. 7]  
랑스어 - "French (language)" [Ch. 6]

프로 선수 - "professional athlete" [Ch. 17]  
프로그램 "a program" [Ch. 5]  
피곤하다 - "to be tired," "to be exhausted" [Ch. 10]  
피구 - "dodge ball" [Ch. 2]  
피부 "skin" [Ch. 19]  
피자 "pizza" [Ch. 7]  
필수하다 - "to be necessary" [Ch. 13]

## ㅎ

하나 - 1 [Ch. 13]  
하늘 "sky" [Ch. 13]  
하다 - "to do" [Ch. 4]  
하루 - "one day" [Ch. 16]  
하얀 "white" (adjective) [Ch. 11]  
하얗 "white" (noun) [Ch. 11]  
하얗다 - "to be white" [Ch. 11]  
하지만 - "but," "however" [Ch. 4]  
하키 "hockey" [Ch. 2]  
하하 - "Haha" [Ch. 7]  
학교 "school" [Ch. 5]  
학생 - "student" [Ch. 7]  
한 - 1 (adjective) [Ch. 13]  
한 번 더 - "once more" (adverb) [Ch. 16]  
한국 - "(South) Korea" [Ch. 6]  
한국 사람 "a Korean (person)" [Ch. 6]  
한국 음식 "Korean food" [Ch. 10]  
한국말 "Korean (language)" [Ch. 6]  
한국어 - "Korean (language)" [Ch. 16]  
한국인 - "a Korean (person)" [Ch. 6]  
한복 "Hanbok" [Ch. 20]  
한식 "Korean food" (abbreviation) [Ch. 10]  
할머니 - "grandmother" [Ch. 18]  
할아버지 - "grandfather" [Ch. 18]

항 "always" (adverb) [Ch. 19]  
해 "the sun" [Ch. 13]  
해 "year" [Ch. 16]  
해 "seaside," "seashore" [Ch. 5]  
핸 "cell phone" (literally, "hand phone") [Ch. 4]  
햄 - "hamburger" [Ch. 7]  
행하다 - "to be happy" [Ch. 12]  
행(을) 땀 - "to wish (someone) good luck" [Ch. 20]  
행(을) 땀요! - "Good luck!" [Ch. 20]  
허 - "waist" [Ch. 10]  
헉 "My gosh" [Ch. 7]  
혀 "tongue" [Ch. 10]  
현재 - "the present" [Ch. 20]  
형 - "older brother" (used by males) [Ch. 18]  
추 - "lake" [Ch. 6]  
혹시 - "by chance" (adverb) [Ch. 19]  
화요일 - "Tuesday" [Ch. 16]  
화장실 "bathroom" [Ch. 8]  
환 "a patient" [Ch. 6]  
환(을) 하다 - "to exchange money" [Ch. 5]  
회 "sashimi" (raw fish) [Ch. 7]  
회 "company" [Ch. 12]  
취 "dessert" [Ch. 8]  
추 "pepper" [Ch. 8]  
환하다 - "to be wonderful" [Ch. 12]  
훔치다 - "to steal" [Ch. 20]  
휴 "Phew" [Ch. 7]  
흔하다 - "to be common" [Ch. 9]  
희망 "hope" [Ch. 11]  
흰 "white" (adjective) [Ch. 11]  
흰 "white" (noun) [Ch. 11]  
힌 "a hint" [Ch. 4]  
힘 "strength," "power" [Ch. 7]



###

**Thank you for checking out my book! I hope you enjoyed reading it as much as I enjoyed writing it. If you enjoyed this book, I'd love if you would leave a review at your favorite retailer. And keep an eye out for my future projects too. I'm always working hard creating new ways to help you learn Korean. Good luck in your studies!**

### **About the Author:**



**Billy Go has been working as a Korean translator since 2008 with his B.A. in Korean, and currently teaches Korean online. He has spent several years living in South Korea, and still visits often.**

### **Connect with me:**

**Subscribe to my Blog: [www.gobillykorean.com](http://www.gobillykorean.com)**

**Subscribe to my videos on YouTube: [youtube.com/gobillykorean](https://youtube.com/gobillykorean)**

**Like me on Facebook: [facebook.com/gobillykorean](https://facebook.com/gobillykorean)**

**Follow me on Twitter: [twitter.com/gobillykorean](https://twitter.com/gobillykorean)**